

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP

**Headquarters, Headquarters
Detachment, Engineer
Brigade**

JULY 2003

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at Army
Knowledge Online (www.us.army.mil)
and the General Dennis J. Reimer
Training and Doctrine Digital Library at
(www.adtdl.army.mil)**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

for the

Headquarters, Headquarters Detachment, Engineer Brigade

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents	i
Preface	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes	2-1
2-1. General	2-1
2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation	6-1
Appendix A - Exercise Operation Order	A-1
Appendix B - Threat Analysis	B-1
Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart	C-1
Glossary	Glossary-1
References	References-1
Questionnaire	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the headquarters, headquarters detachment, engineer brigade table of organization and equipment (TOE) 05332L000.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program. In addition to collective tasks, the training program includes references to soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-332-68-MTP for the Headquarters, Headquarters Detachment, Engineer Brigade.

b. STPs for the appropriate MOSs and skill levels.

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of an example field training exercise (FTX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each T&EO identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- (a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) Reference. This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

(g) Task standards. This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

(i) GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threats, as well as special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Command and control.
- Control engineer operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Plan engineer operations.
- Sustain engineer operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as a situational training exercise (STX). Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS) version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's

assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. **Safety.** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk Management. Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Once understood, risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management, in theory, is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

- (1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.
- (2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-1 is a tool to be used for assessing hazards.
- (3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.
- (4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.
- (5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action reviews (AARs). Develop lessons learned.

			HAZARD PROBABILITY				
			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
			A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH		HIGH		LOW
	CRITICAL	II	HIGH	HIGH		LOW	LOW
	MARGINAL	III	HIGH	MEDIUM		LOW	LOW
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV	LOW	LOW		LOW	LOW

Severity

Catastrophic	Death, permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment

Probability

Frequent	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life Continuously experienced
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life Occurs frequently
Occasional	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely

Risk Levels

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment

Figure 1-1. Risk Assessment Matrix

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
 - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
 - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
 - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
 - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

concepts.

- (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk-management

(2) Staff.

training.

- (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk-reduction options for

measures.

- (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance
- (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
- (d) Assess safety performance during training.
- (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate leaders.

operations they lead.

- (a) Apply effective risk-management concepts and methods consistently to the
- (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

- (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.
- (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
- (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
- (d) Work as a team member.
- (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) Causes of fratricide. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of the unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

- (a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.
- (b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.
- (c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (d) Oversupervision of units.
- (e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (g) Loss of initiative.
- (h) Disrupted operations.
- (i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

Step 1. Identify Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-2). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

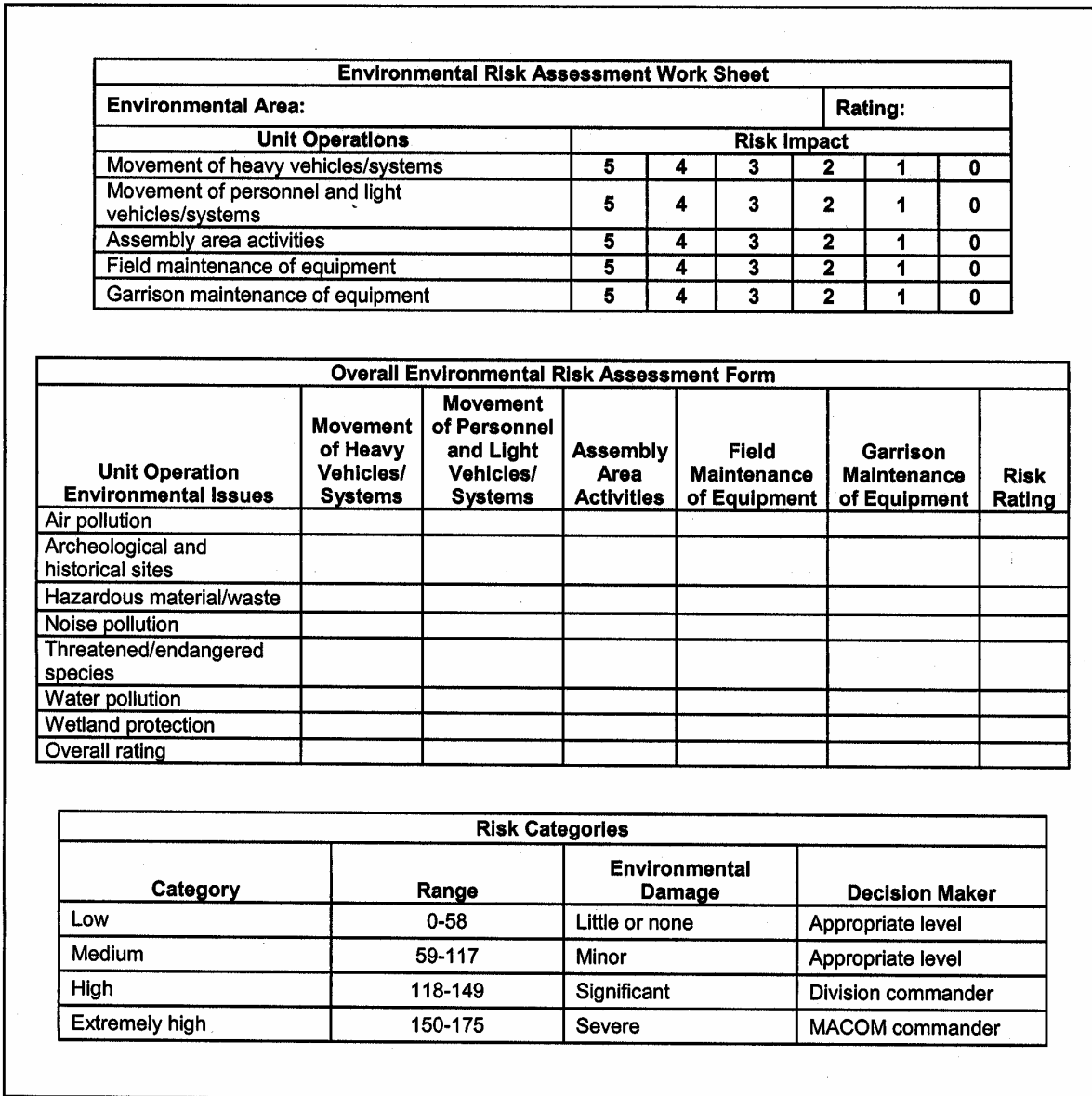


Figure 1-2. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

Step 3. Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

Step 4. Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

Step 5. Implement Controls. Implement environmental protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

Step 6. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings, while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in the preface, or use the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table Mission Title
Command and Control Subordinate Elements Control Engineer Operations Fight As Infantry Plan Engineer Operations Sustain Unit Operations Defend the Unit Conduct Unit Survivability Operations

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	Command and Control	Control Operations	Fight as Infantry	Plan Engineer Operations
Develop Intelligence				
05-1-1389 Identify Geospatial Support Requirements		X	X	X
05-6-0090 Perform Engineer Intelligence Functions	X	X		X
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
05-6-0092 Plan Engineer Countermobility Operations	X	X		X
05-6-0123 Plan Mobilization/Deployment Operations	X	X		X
05-6-0125 Plan Engineer Mobility Operations	X	X		X
05-6-0640 Plan River / Gap Crossing Operations	X	X		X
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire			X	
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X			
07-3-1112.05-T01A React to an Ambush			X	

Collective Tasks	Command and Control	Control Operations	Fight as Infantry	Plan Engineer Operations
07-3-1135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas			X	
12-1-0409.05-T01A Prepare Personnel for Deployment				
Protect the Force				
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment				
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack				
05-3-0113 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				
05-6-0094 Plan Engineer Survivability Operations	X	X		X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X			
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures				X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
05-2-0051 Coordinate for Food Service Support	X		X	

Collective Tasks		Command and Control	Control Operations	Fight as Infantry	Plan Engineer Operations
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	X			
05-6-0096	Plan General Engineer Operations	X	X		X
05-6-1000	Plan Logistics Operations	X	X		X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X			
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X		X	X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	X			
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	X			
11-5-0101.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM)	X			
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X			
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions				
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support				
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program				
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)				
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations				
Exercise Command and Control					
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X		X	X
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X		X	
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	X	X		X
05-6-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X	X		X
05-6-0029	Develop an Area Damage Control (ADC) Plan	X	X		X
05-6-0062	Control Operations	X	X		
05-6-0064	Establish a Command Post (CP)	X			X

Collective Tasks		Command and Control	Control Operations	Fight as Infantry	Plan Engineer Operations
05-6-0066	Conduct Liaison Operations	X	X		X
05-6-0068	Conduct Base Cluster Operations	X	X		X
05-6-0070	Plan Engineer Operations		X		X
05-6-0072	Control Engineer Operations	X	X		
05-6-0074	Control Area Damage Control Operations	X	X		
05-6-0078	Control Mobilization and Deployment Operations	X	X		
05-6-0080	Recommend Priority of Employment of Engineer Assets	X	X		X
05-6-0086	Identify the Requirement for and Prioritize Engineer Class IV and Class V Stocks	X	X		X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength				
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability				

Collective tasks		Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
Develop Intelligence				
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	X	X	X
05-6-0090	Perform Engineer Intelligence Functions	X	X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
05-6-0092	Plan Engineer Countermobility Operations	X	X	
05-6-0123	Plan Mobilization/Deployment Operations	X		
05-6-0125	Plan Engineer Mobility Operations	X		
05-6-0640	Plan River / Gap Crossing Operations	X		
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire		X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	X	X	X
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X	X
12-1-0409.05-T01A	Prepare Personnel for Deployment	X		
Protect the Force				
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack		X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike		X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack		X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations		X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X

Collective tasks		Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X
05-3-0113	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield	X	X	X
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food Service Support	X	X	X
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations	X		
05-6-0096	Plan General Engineer Operations	X		
05-6-1000	Plan Logistics Operations	X		X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X	X	X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support	X		X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	X		X
11-5-0101.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM)	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X		X
12-1-0406.05-T01A	Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	X		
12-1-0410.05-T01A	Provide Legal Support	X		

Collective tasks		Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
16-1-1001.05-T01A	Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program	X		
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control				
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	X	X	X
05-6-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X	X	X
05-6-0029	Develop an Area Damage Control (ADC) Plan			
05-6-0062	Control Operations	X		
05-6-0064	Establish a Command Post (CP)	X		
05-6-0066	Conduct Liaison Operations	X		X
05-6-0068	Conduct Base Cluster Operations	X	X	X
05-6-0070	Plan Engineer Operations	X		
05-6-0072	Control Engineer Operations	X		
05-6-0074	Control Area Damage Control Operations	X		
05-6-0078	Control Mobilization and Deployment Operations	X		
05-6-0080	Recommend Priority of Employment of Engineer Assets	X		
05-6-0086	Identify the Requirement for and Prioritize Engineer Class IV and Class V Stocks	X		
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength	X		X
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X		X

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. This chapter provides a mission outline and describes the use of the MTP for developing battalion training plans. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. FMs 7-0 and 7-125-101 provide detailed information on training management. They should be used with the MTP to develop battalion training plans.

3-2. Long-Range Planning. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to Army training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit METL and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 7-1 and other FM 7-series manuals provide guidance on developing a unit METL.

a. Develop the Unit METL. An analysis of all specified and implied missions and other guidance is the first step in developing a METL. The next step is restating the unit wartime mission. After analyzing the unit missions and external directives, identify a list of tasks that must be accomplished if the unit is to accomplish its wartime mission successfully. Subordinate commanders and key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) participate in selecting the tasks. Develop a task list using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of this MTP, the missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans, and the missions directed by higher HQ guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit wartime mission. Selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher HQ for approval. The tasks selected are the unit METL. Refer to Figure 3-1.

- | |
|---|
| <p>(1) DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection 2. Disseminate Intelligence Information <p>(2) DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct a Tactical Movement 2. Occupy an Assembly Area 3. Reorganize as Infantry <p>(3) EMPLOY FIREPOWER</p> <p>Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support</p> <p>(4) PROTECT THE FORCE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prepare an Obstacle Plan 2. Plan Survivability Operations 3. Direct Survivability Operations 4. Defend the Convoy Against Ground Attack <p>(5) PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Administration Operations (Battalion) 2. Treat Casualties 3. Perform Field Sanitation Measures 4. Evacuate Casualties 5. Provide Food Service Support 6. Provide Unit Supply Support 7. Provide Legal Support <p>(6) EXERCISE C2</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Prepare an Engineer Estimate 2. Prepare an Engineer Annex 3. Prepare an Operation Order 4. Control Combat Operations 5. Report Obstacle Information 6. Manage Battlefield Stress 7. Operate a Net Control Station 8. Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures |
|---|

Figure 3-1. Sample Battalion METL

b. Establish the Training Objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes the training objectives. The training objectives are the conditions and standards that describe the situation or the environment and the ultimate outcome criteria that the unit must meet to perform the tasks successfully. Training objectives and standards for the METL can be obtained from this MTP, appropriate STPs, higher HQ command guidance, and the local SOP.

c. Conduct the Training Assessment. The training assessment is the commander’s continuous comparison of the unit current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and the subordinate commanders assess the organization current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as “T” (trained), “P” (needs practice), “U” (untrained), or “?” (unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit training requirements. Refer to Figure 3-2.

Mission-Essential Tasks	Training Strategy						
	Develop Intelligence	Deploy/ Conduct Maneuver	Employ Firepower	Protect the Force	Perform CSS and Sustainment	Exercise C2	Overall
Occupy an Assembly Area	P	T	P	P	T	U	P
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	P	T	T	T	?	P	T
Conduct Logistic Operations	T	P	T	T	U	T	T
Report Casualties	U	?	P	P	T	T	U

Figure 3-2. Sample Commander’s Training Assessment

d. Develop the Training Strategy and the Commander’s Guidance. The training strategy is developed from the outcome of the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency that each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander’s guidance and his training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

- (1) Review the higher commander’s goals.
- (2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of the higher commanders.
- (3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit. For example—
 - Attain and sustain proficiency in all the MTP missions.
 - Maintain a 90 percent operational-readiness (OR) rate.
 - Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification.

e. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on the training status, task criticality, and the relative training emphasis that the task should receive. Figure 3-3 provides a sample training priority list.

Task	Source	Training Priority
Exercise C2	MTP	1
Control Combat Operations	MTP	2
Disseminate Intelligence Information	MTP	3
Control Combined Arms Breaching	MTP	4
Prepare an Engineer Estimate	MTP	5

Figure 3-3. Sample Battalion Training Priority List

f. Prepare a Long-Range Planning Calendar. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify the time periods available for training mission-essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects the unit training events and activities for the upcoming 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

- (1) Select the training events and activities to train the mission. At battalion level, the commander must project the events that will enable him to achieve his goals.
- (2) Assign a time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.
- (3) Examine various alternatives to make optimum use of the support available to train the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher HQ-directed training, battalion-directed training events, and subordinate level-projected training events. Resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are the battalion level training model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and STRAC.
- (4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher HQ.
- (5) Issue guidance. Issue training guidance to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes the—
 - (a) Training policies.
 - (b) Types of mandatory training.
 - (c) Training resource guidance.
 - (d) Quotas for centralized training (schools).
 - (e) Training goals.

3-3. Short-Range Planning. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

- a. Review the training program, current unit proficiency, resources, and training environment.

- (1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if the assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3) Review the current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review the training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and collectively impact the training programs are—

(a) Personnel assigned.

(b) Personnel turbulence.

(c) Morale.

(d) Education programs.

(e) Mandatory training.

(f) Visits, inspections, and tests.

(g) Supplies and equipment.

(h) Non-mission-related activities.

(i) Other programs.

b. Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1) Examine the events that are scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range planning calendar.

(3) Determine the desired outcomes for the scheduled events.

(4) Analyze the missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths (as necessary).

(6) Select a specific training objective for the mission and the tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.

(7) Prepare a short-range planning calendar or three monthly schedules. The short-range planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.

(8) Review short-range plans with higher HQ.

(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. Near-Term Planning. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Use the short-range plan to prepare weekly training schedules.

- a. Review the unit training program, proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long- and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.
- b. Finalize the plans based on the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.
- c. Prepare trainers, observers/controllers (O/Cs), OPFOR, and support personnel to know what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC) Training. Planning training for the HHC provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that deal with time and the availability of personnel. The staff and HQ sections are involved in day-to-day operations and the support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements adequately. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the battalion to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a. Battalion Staff Training.

(1) Training the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the staff training objectives. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform include—

- (a) Analyzing the terrain.
- (b) Functioning as an effective team.
- (c) Exchanging information.
- (d) Preparing estimates.
- (e) Giving appraisals.
- (f) Making recommendations and decisions.
- (g) Preparing plans.
- (h) Issuing orders.
- (i) Coordinating and controlling unit operations.
- (j) Supervising subordinate units.

(2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used to plan training (such as the level of proficiency and the training support available). FM 7-1 contains detailed information for conducting the exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises:

- (a) Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT). TEWTs are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and conduct unit missions.

(b) Map exercise (MAPEX). MAPEXs are low-cost, low-overhead training exercises that allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decision under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c) Command-post exercise (CPX). CPXs are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.

(d) Field training exercise. FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs drill the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. Normally, the staff completes the staff planning tasks before the exercise begins. Brigade-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs; MAPEXs; CPXs; command field exercises (CFXs); and combined arms, live-fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different, and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b. Battalion Training. Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion executive officer (XO) coordinates with the battalion commander to ensure that the soldiers are mastering the individual tasks.

3-6. Training Exercise Development. Chapter 4 provides a sample exercise for the battalion to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only a sample FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for FTX preparation. Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a. Mission and Task Selection for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Site Selection. Confirm the selection of a training area.

c. Scenario Development. After the missions and the tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.

(1) List the mission, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercises. These events would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the established time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. O/Cs and OPFOR Selection. O/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) is used. It is difficult for a battalion to provide O/Cs and OPFOR from its own resources. When O/Cs and OPFOR must be provided from within

the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attaining the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher HQ should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

e. **Control Plan Preparation.** Develop control plans to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consists of—

- (1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- (2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
- (3) Detailed schedules of activities for units.
- (4) OPFORs and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f. **Evaluation Plan Preparation.** All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, the evaluator, and the evaluation time. The evaluation consists of—

- (1) Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
- (2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
- (3) Detailed time schedules for the evaluation and the AARs.

3-7. **Mission Outline.** The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and his staff in the preparation of the training plans. Figure 3-4 is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

FTX CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS 5-1-E0001	
Task Number	Task Title
03-2-C310	Conduct a Chemical Survey
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-1-0500	Control a Hasty Gap Crossing
05-1-0520	Plan Breaching Operations
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy Assembly Area (AA)

Figure 3-4. Sample Engineer Battalion Mission Outline

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. FTX Exercises

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. An STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. An STX—

- a. Provides repetitive training on the mission.
- b. Allows training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

ENGINEER BATTALION FTX 5-1-E0001 CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the battalion operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.
2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.
3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the battalion mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise.
- (c) A CPX conducted in garrison.
- (d) A CFX conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A TEWT.
- (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
- (g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

- (a) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
- (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends with the compilations of the area-damage-control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

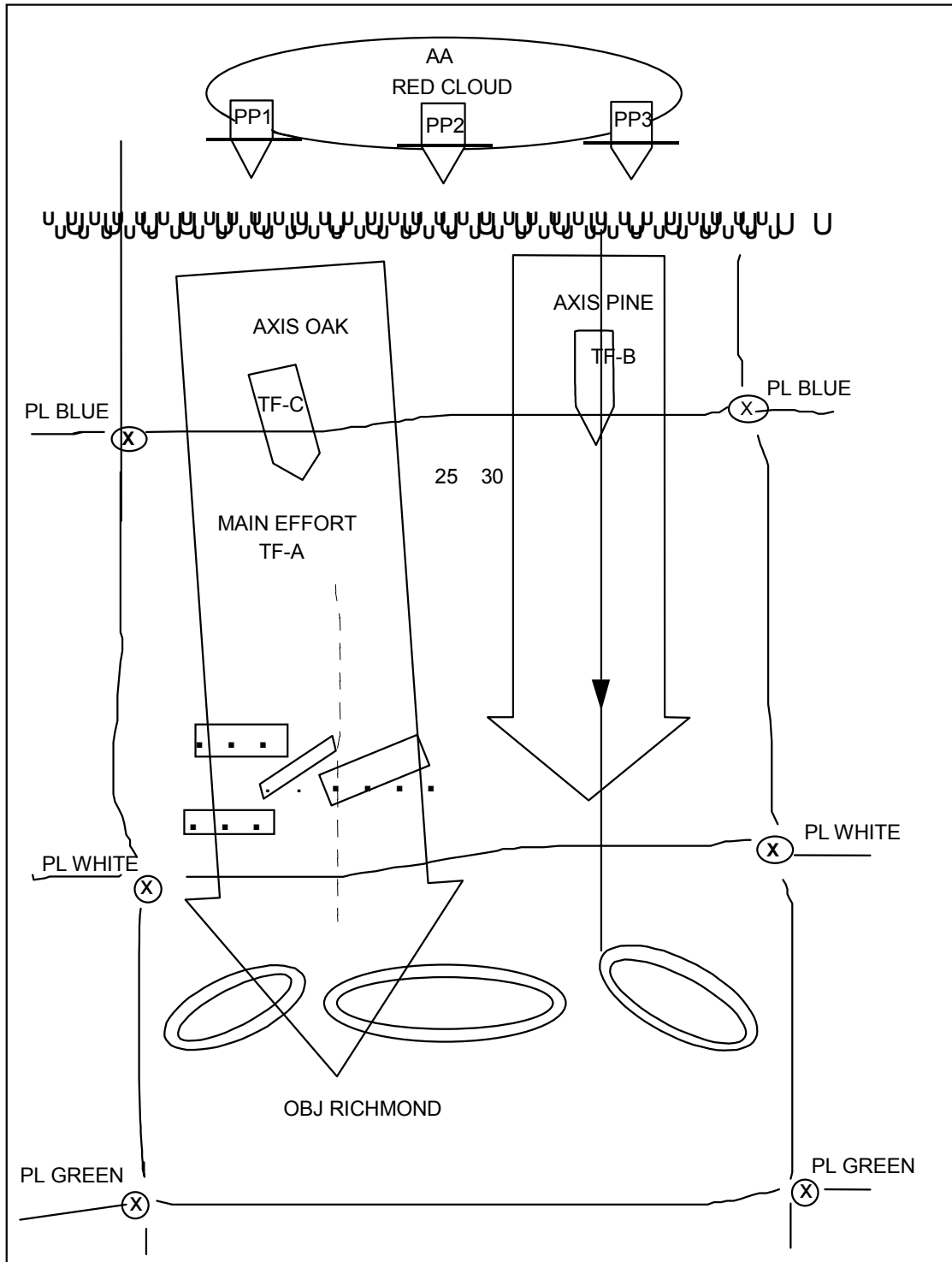


Figure 4-1. General FTX Scenario

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
Total time:		69 hours
*These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.		

Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an AA in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on AA no later than 01900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
 - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance of the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
 - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
 - c. Detailed Timings. None.
 - d. Coordinating Instructions.
 - (1) Start point (SP) NK243567 at 011600 hours.
 - (2) Route Monroe listing command post (CP).
 - (3) Quarters party is the 25th Battalion.
 - (4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.
 - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
 - a. Command.
 - b. Signal.
 - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
 - (2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

Figure 4-2. Sample Movement Order

4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The battalion is operating in an arid environment. The battalion will operate under threat of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, and/or III attacks.

d. The battalion should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following FRAGO:

"TF, conduct in-stride breaching operations and continue the attack."

b. After completing the breaches, the TFs receive fire from an enemy position and encounter complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 by 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to geographical or "school" solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Supported Requirements. Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the exercise.			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this FTX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001

Task Title	Task Number
Disseminate Intelligence Information	5-1-70400
Maintain Operations Security	71-3-C0232
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	5-1-70001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	5-1-70500
Plan Breaching Operations	5-1-70520
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	5-2-C0301
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C0202
Conduct Administrative Operations (Battalion)	5-1-71008
Perform Unit Maintenance Operations	5-2-71133
Treat Casualties	8-2-R0337
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	8-2-C0315
Evacuate Casualties	8-2-R0316
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-C0317
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-C0320
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-C0406
Prepare an Engineer Annex	5-1-70003
Prepare an Operations Order	5-1-70008
Control Combat Operations	5-1-70018
Report Obstacle Information	5-1-70025
Report Engineer Information	5-1-70026
Analyze Battlefield Information	5-1-70415
Control Combined Arms Breaching	5-1-70048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	5-2-71018
Operate a Net Control Station	5-4-70020
Establish Internal Communications	5-4-70024
Establish External Communications	5-4-70028
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-2-C0302
Combat Battlefield Stress	12-1-C0401
Report Casualties	12-1-C0403
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-C0405

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

Develop Intelligence

Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-1389).....	5-3
Perform Engineer Intelligence Functions (05-6-0090).....	5-5
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-8
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-10

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Plan Engineer Countermobility Operations (05-6-0092).....	5-13
Plan Mobilization/Deployment Operations (05-6-0123).....	5-15
Plan Engineer Mobility Operations (05-6-0125).....	5-18
Plan River / Gap Crossing Operations (05-6-0640).....	5-20
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-22
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-24
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A).....	5-28
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A).....	5-30
Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A).....	5-32

Protect the Force

Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A).....	5-34
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-36
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-38
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-40
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-42
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A).....	5-44
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A).....	5-46
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-48
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A).....	5-50
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A).....	5-54
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301).....	5-56
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911).....	5-58
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113).....	5-61
Plan Engineer Survivability Operations (05-6-0094).....	5-64
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A).....	5-66
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A).....	5-68
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-70
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A).....	5-72
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-75

Perform CSS and Sustainment

Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051).....	5-77
Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007).....	5-79
Plan General Engineer Operations (05-6-0096).....	5-82
Plan Logistics Operations (05-6-1000).....	5-84
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A).....	5-86
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A).....	5-89
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-91
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-93

Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM) (11-5-0101.05-T01A)	5-95
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)	5-98
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)	5-100
Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)	5-103
Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program (16-1-1001.05-T01A)	5-106
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)	5-108
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)	5-110
Exercise Command and Control	
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008)	5-113
Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)	5-116
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018)	5-118
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (05-6-0002)	5-122
Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-6-0003)	5-125
Develop an Area Damage Control (ADC) Plan (05-6-0029)	5-127
Control Operations (05-6-0062)	5-129
Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-6-0064)	5-131
Conduct Liaison Operations (05-6-0066)	5-133
Conduct Base Cluster Operations (05-6-0068)	5-135
Plan Engineer Operations (05-6-0070)	5-137
Control Engineer Operations (05-6-0072)	5-139
Control Area Damage Control Operations (05-6-0074)	5-141
Control Mobilization and Deployment Operations (05-6-0078)	5-144
Recommend Priority of Employment of Engineer Assets (05-6-0080)	5-146
Identify the Requirement for and Prioritize Engineer Class IV and Class V Stocks (05-6-0086)	5-148
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)	5-150
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)	5-152
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)	5-154

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section

TASK: Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-1389)
 (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2) (FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The staff conducts continuous tactical operations during the development and implementation of an engineer intelligence collection plan. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Identify the needs for standard and nonstandard topographic products that will support the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process, satisfy questions raised in the priority intelligence requirements (PIR), and complete the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. Digital units send and receive reports and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The staff identifies the commander's intelligence requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received the commander's planning guidance and concept of operations after receiving the mission from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of information (EEI) and PIR. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Developed the PIR in the form of a question or statement. (2) Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included but was not limited to— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Friendly engineer capabilities. (b) Enemy engineer capabilities. (c) Enemy conventional and scatterable minefield locations. (d) Contaminated areas. (e) Engineer resources. (f) Electricity, gas, water, petroleum, oils, and lubricant (POL) resources. <p>NOTE: The following products are provided by the topographic element: terrain, waterways/drainage, ports and harbors, roads (including military load classification [MLC]), railroads, trafficability, airfields, natural and man-made obstacles, and built-up areas.</p> <p>2. The staff develops a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the PIR. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reviewed the commander's guidance and intent. (2) Considered the current situation. (3) Considered the mission. b. Identified the EEI needed to answer the PIR. c. Implemented the collection strategy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assessed the current database. <p>NOTE: Digital units request DTSS products using digital capabilities according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Reviewed the maps, charts, and imagery. (b) Checked the analysis, reports, and IPB products. (2) Requested products that answered the PIR questions and fulfilled mission directives and the commander's intent in order to fill gaps in the database.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Perform Engineer Intelligence Functions (05-6-0090)
 (FM 5-170) (FM 20-3) (FM 3-34.2)
 (FM 34-5) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-33)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-410) (FM 5-430-00-1)
 (FM 5-480) (FM 55-20) (FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is supporting continuous operations. The commander indicates the need to plan for the next operation. Information on the weather and enemy forces is provided to the engineer staff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and staff have an accurate and timely battlefield assessment of the area of operation (AO). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The group or brigade performs an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the impact that courses of action (COAs) have on the AO. b. Analyzed the impact that precipitation and temperatures have on tactical operations, both friendly and enemy. c. Analyzed the capabilities of the engineer vehicle to maneuver in limited visibility and to keep pace with the maneuver unit fighting vehicles. d. Analyzed the terrain for observation/fields of fire to determine obstacle emplacement. e. Analyzed the terrain to identify possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance. f. Identified existing natural and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and the placement of reinforcing obstacles. g. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control and/or deny enemy control of key and decisive terrain. h. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach. i. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on avenues of approach. j. Obtained information that was required to support engineer projects and determined local resource availability. 2. The group or brigade develops the enemy engineer situation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information concerning the reinforcement of enemy engineers from higher echelons. b. Determined the disposition of enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units having remotely delivered mine capability. c. Assessed specific capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacing remotely delivered mines from aircraft or artillery. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Evaluated past and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques to identify enemy weaknesses and strengths.</p> <p>e. Predicted possible enemy COAs and the impact of the engineer situation on these COAs.</p> <p>3. The group or brigade develops a situational template of enemy engineer operations.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the situational template included the probable levels of enemy support.</p> <p>b. Ensured that weather and terrain data were incorporated into the situational template.</p> <p>c. Developed an overlay of anticipated enemy obstacles, fortifications, and other significant enemy engineer activities.</p> <p>4. The group or brigade plans or directs the engineer intelligence collection.</p> <p>a. Determined the priority intelligence requirements (PIR).</p> <p>b. Developed an intelligence collection plan.</p> <p>c. Implemented the intelligence collection plan.</p> <p>d. Tasked subordinate units to do specific tasks.</p> <p>e. Briefed reconnaissance personnel on the objectives, the area to be reconnoitered, the suggested method of reconnaissance, and any other guidance from the commander.</p> <p>f. Provided the unit with forms and materials for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>g. Consolidated, collected, and summarized reconnaissance and intelligence information.</p> <p>h. Maintained files on all incoming and outgoing communications, to include intelligence summary (INTSUM) reports, intelligence reports (INTREPs), engineer resource reports, and minefield and obstacle reports.</p> <p>i. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to PIR from the intelligence and reconnaissance reports.</p> <p>j. Completed or updated the engineer estimate situation analysis.</p> <p>k. Disseminated intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Communication Section
Tactical Section

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none">1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.b. Annotated the date and time of capture.c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.d. Noted the capturing unit.e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Described the type of equipment and documents.b. Stated the date and time of capture.c. Identified the capturing unit.d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ.<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)
 (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure. <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings. <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected. d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage. h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</p> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC). a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy. b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence. d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming. e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service. f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures. a. Employed observation posts (OPs). b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Followed stand-to procedures. d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted. e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire. f. Used the challenge and password. g. Limited access into the area of the unit. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Picked up litter. j. Employed air guards.</p> <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan Engineer Countermobility Operations (05-6-0092)
 (FM 71-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100)
 (FM 5-102)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is conducting continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. The group or brigade is tasked to provide countermobility support to a maneuver force engaged in defensive operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff plans countermobility operations to support the maneuver plan and makes the best use of available engineer assets, consistent with the supported commander's intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The staff receives the mission from the group or brigade commander. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the commander's guidance and intent were understood. b. Completed a staff/engineer estimate. 2. Staff members write the portion of the annex pertaining to their area of responsibility. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with personnel, intelligence, and logistics resources to support the plan. b. Prioritized engineer effort to maneuver elements consistent with the scheme of maneuver. c. Evaluated courses of action (COAs) to turn, disrupt, fix, or block threat formations in support of the operations plan, to include reserve and situational obstacles. d. Delegated authority and coordinated the use of Air Force, artillery, and aviation for availability of supporting scatterable mines, Gator, area denial artillery munition (ADAM)/remote antiarmor mine (RAAM), and Volcano. e. Determined operations designed to mislead enemy perception of true maneuver element intentions. f. Planned for maintenance of main supply routes (MSRs) and lanes to facilitate sustainment of the force. * 3. The executive officer (XO) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) supervises the staff during preparation of the annex. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Resolved any disputes among the staff. b. Ensured that the commander's guidance/intent was reflected in the engineer annex and presented it to the group or brigade commander for approval. 4. The staff prepares and issues appropriate operation orders (OPORDs) or fragmentary orders (FRAGOs). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Tasked subordinate units to support the plan. b. Monitored the construction of obstacles being emplaced and assigned obstacle numbers.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-225-4125	Advise the Supported Commander of Engineer Combat Vehicle Capabilities
052-227-3301	Estimate Tank Ditch Production Requirements

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Plan Mobilization/Deployment Operations (05-6-0123)
 (FORSCOM REG 500-3-3) (FORSCOM REG 55-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is located at its home station before mobilization/deployment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade plans mobilization/deployment operations in detail to reduce delays in the mobilization/deployment process. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The group or brigade commander, aided by the staff, plans for mobilization/deployment.</p> <p>2. The group or brigade provides administrative support in preparation for overseas movement (POM).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided personnel information. b. Conducted soldier readiness processing. c. Maintained personnel mobilization packets. d. Provided legal counseling, such as wills and powers of attorney. e. Ensured that medical and dental examinations were current and that required medical warning tags were issued. f. Tested periodically for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). g. Ensured that immunizations were current. h. Identified personnel who wear eyeglasses and/or hearing aids. i. Ensured that all personnel had the appropriate identification documents. j. Maintained the personnel 201 file. k. Updated and maintained unit personnel Standard Installation Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) data. l. Maintained personnel finance records. m. Maintained health records. n. Screened the personnel control facility (PCF) for health care providers. o. Prepared dependent identification card applications. p. Ensured that personnel had the required security clearances. q. Screened personnel for nondeployable members. r. Requested mobilization publications and forms. s. Familiarized administration personnel on SIDPERS actions for active duty component personnel during wartime. t. Accounted for inactive National Guard (ING) personnel. u. Updated family care plans. v. Updated business care plans. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> w. Verified aptitude and language proficiency. x. Appointed a Class A agent and/or military personnel, Army (MPA). y. Prepared signature cards. z. Prepared and maintained a unit alert roster. aa. Established a family support group (FSG). ab. Identified volunteer soldiers (US Army Reserve [USAR] or National Guard [NG] only). ac. Verified education standards for mobilization/deployment according to deployability standards. ad. Coordinated accreditation of automated information systems (AISs). <p>3. The group or brigade performs precombat checks for the reserve component (RC) before mobilization/deployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a unit mobilization/deployment file. b. Reviewed the mobilization file. c. Planned and conducted premobilization training. d. Developed the postmobilization plan. e. Established and maintained the postmobilization training and support requirements (PTSR). f. Developed a home station (HS) unit activity plan. g. Tested the alert notification plan. h. Established liaison with the mobilization station (MS). i. Identified key personnel to be ordered to duty early (USAR). j. Conducted premobilization/deployment briefings. k. Established a communications security (COMSEC) account. l. Identified map requirements. m. Identified communications requirements for the convoy. n. Ensured that signal operation instruction (SOI) documents were on hand. o. Completed the initial MS activities checklist. p. Identified the advance party position and mission. q. Established liaison with the coordinating installation (CI)/supporting installation (SI) and the mobilization station. <p>4. The group or brigade performs precombat checks for the NG before mobilization/deployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a logistics data file. b. Developed a lodging plan for the HS. c. Developed a subsistence plan for the HS. d. Identified petroleum, oils, and lubricant (POL) requirements for the HS. e. Ensured continual maintenance on all equipment. f. Identified contracting requirements to the Adjutant (S1) or the United States Property and Fiscal Officer (USPFO). g. Requisitioned all authorized property. h. Identified Class V authorized basic load (ABL) requirements. i. Identified Class VIII requirements (medical supply). j. Maintained the Class IX prescribed load list (PLL)/maintenance parts list (MPL). k. Prepared the unit movement plan according to the appropriate regulation. l. Tested the unit movement plan. m. Maintained unit level logistics system (ULLS) documents. n. Developed and coordinated the unit redeployment plans (return to HS). o. Identified MS advance-party logistics personnel and requirements. p. Identified nondeployable property. q. Transferred facility responsibility. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan Engineer Mobility Operations (05-6-0125)
 (FM 71-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-34.2)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is conducting continuous operations. The group or brigade receives a mission from higher headquarters (HQ) to provide mobility support to a maneuver unit conducting offensive operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff plans mobility operations to support the scheme of maneuver consistent with the supported commander's intent, maximizing the use of engineer assets. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The staff receives the mission from higher HQ or the group or brigade commander. 2. The staff receives and understands the commander's guidance and intent. 3. The staff completes a engineer estimate. 4. The staff prepares a written portion of the engineer annex for its areas of responsibility. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with all other elements for personnel, intelligence, and logistic requirements to support the engineer plan. b. Developed an engineer plan. c. Prioritized engineer effort to maneuver elements consistent with the scheme of maneuver. d. Ensured that the main supply routes and lanes were maintained to facilitate resupply of the forces. e. Developed obstacle plans to protect the flank of the force from enemy attack, to include situational obstacles, as necessary. f. Task-organized engineer forces. * 5. The executive officer (XO) supervises the staff during the preparation of the annex and resolves any disagreements; he then presents the annex to the commander for final approval. 6. The staff prepares and issues appropriate operation orders (OPORDs) or fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), tasking subordinate elements in support of the plan. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
05-6-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan River / Gap Crossing Operations (05-6-0640)
 (FM 90-13) (FM 3-34.2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is conducting continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. The group or brigade receives a mission to support river/gap crossing operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The river/gap crossing plan is prepared as an annex to the operation plan (OPLAN)/operation order (OPORD). It supports the commander's intent and makes the best use of available engineer resources. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The staff receives the mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the commander's guidance and intent were understood. b. Completed the staff estimate. * 2. The commander, aided by his staff, makes recommendations for the employment of engineer assets to support the river/gap crossing. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recommended closing site locations based on the terrain and assessments available. b. Recommended what type of assault the unit would use (either rafting and/or bridging). c. Recommended the employment of engineer assets in support of deception operations. * 3. The officer in charge (OIC) makes recommendations to the maneuver commander on mobility operations on the far shore. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Allocated organic engineer forces to facilitate the expansion of the bridgehead on the far shore. b. Considered possible enemy obstacles in the sector that would impede the mobility of friendly forces. c. Recommended the priority of vehicles (tanks, armored personnel carriers [APCs], wheeled) and personnel for river/gap crossing operations. * 4. The commander integrates the river/gap crossing plan into the OPLAN/OPORD as an annex and issues the appropriate orders to subordinate engineer units. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the crossing time line, the vehicle crossing capability matrix, and the synchronization matrix. b. Ensured that the plan was consistent with the commander's intent, the scheme of maneuver, and the fire support plan. c. Coordinated with appropriate maneuver staff elements (signal officer, fire support officer, chemical officer, air defense artillery [ADA] officer). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)
 (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters." b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Personnel closed all hatches. (2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader. 2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader. 3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions. b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions. 4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD). 5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 6. The element consolidates and reorganizes. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Tactical Section

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicated the start point (SP). b. Identified locations of friendly units. c. Identified potential ambush sites. d. Identified checkpoints (CPs). e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts. f. Indicated the release point (RP). <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices. d. Verified map information. e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time. i. Prepared the strip map. <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included military police (MP) support. b. Included medical support. c. Included fire support (FS). d. Included engineer support. e. Included maintenance contact team support. f. Included additional requirements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Corrected minor deficiencies. c. Reported major deficiencies. d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials. e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel. f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces. g. Placed antennas at their lowest height. h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements. <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions. b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions. d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy. e. Specified passenger locations. f. Appointed air guards. g. Organized the trail party element. h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader. <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Identified the convoy chain of command. c. Detailed the convoy route. d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed. e. Specified convoy intervals. f. Identified the scheduled halts. g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefed immediate-action security measures. i. Briefed blackout condition procedures. j. Specified the location of medical support. k. Specified the location of maintenance support. l. Briefed communication procedures. m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination. <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP. <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the SP crossing time. b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed. c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps. d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP crossing time. <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed CPs as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified time. <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ. <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods. <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander. <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections. <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)
 (FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades. b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated. 2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified enemy positions. b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy. c. Took up covered positions. d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush. 3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first. b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke. c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position. 4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position. b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques. 5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position. b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy. * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. a. Reported the situation to higher HQ. b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary. c. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-21.71) (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is part of a larger dismounted moving force that encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Rules of engagement (ROE) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The element moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The United States (US) forces comply with the ROE. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the point man signaled "danger area" and that it was relayed throughout the platoon. b. Halted the platoon and maintained local security. c. Moved forward to the point man and confirmed the danger area. * 2. The element leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed the route for the platoon if the danger area could be bypassed. b. Controlled the crossing of the danger area with minimum time spent in or near the danger area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Informed all squad leaders of the situation. (2) Designated the nearside and farside rally points. (3) Directed the positioning of the nearside security team. (4) Selected a crossing point that provided cover and concealment. (5) Assigned the farside security team. * 3. The element leader selects the farside clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon. 4. The nearside security team provides security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Observed to the flanks. b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security team. c. Warned of enemy approach before the main body was engaged. 5. The farside team reconnoiters the farside. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed the danger area once the nearside security team was in place. b. Reconnoiters the farside and ensured that any terrain (small hills, folds, or streambeds) that might have concealed enemy positions was clear of the enemy. c. Established an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area. d. Signaled to the squad leader that the area was clear; the message was relayed to the platoon leader. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The element crosses the danger area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the method designated by the platoon leader: line (all at once), wedge (file), small groups, or individually. b. Used nearside security to overwatch the platoon crossing. c. Crossed the danger area quickly and quietly. d. Executed Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (Army Training and Evaluation Program [ARTEP] 7-8-DRILL) if contact was made. e. Established local security once across the danger area. f. Completed the crossing with the nearside security team crossing the danger area and regaining its positions in the formation. 7. The platoon continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accounted for all members. b. Resumed tactical movement. c. Maintained the proper formation and personnel intervals. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Prepare Personnel for Deployment (12-1-0409.05-T01A)

(FM 7-22.7)

(AR 220-10)

(AR 600-38)

(AR 600-8)

(AR 600-8-14)

(AR 600-8-2)

(AR 600-8-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tasked to deploy to a theater of operations. The element is assigned the responsibility to process personnel for overseas movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element is administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified in the operation order (OPORD) or the letter of instruction (LOI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) plans the preparation for oversea movement (POM). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established processing requirements. b. Established support requirements. c. Published the POM plan. d. Briefed the command group. e. Coordinated the POM with the brigade S1. * 2. The S1 or the personnel and administration center (PAC) supervisor coordinates POM requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel) (G1), for personnel service company (PSC) support. b. Coordinated with the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) for legal support. c. Coordinated with the medical department activity (MEDDAC) and the dental activity (DENTAC) for medical and dental support. d. Coordinated with the provost marshal (PM) for privately owned vehicle (POV) storage. 3. The S1 section participates in the POM process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted liaison with the POM site commander. b. Briefed soldiers on POM procedures. c. Issued the POM checklist. d. Reviewed family care plans. e. Reviewed pay elections. f. Assisted soldiers in completing postal forms. g. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness. h. Identified nonparticipants and nondeployable soldiers. * 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor conducts briefings for family members. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established the briefing site and schedules. c. Published a family support packet. d. Monitored family support briefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position. <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. <p>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4. b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)
 (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed. <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas. <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment. <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message. <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed. <p>3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. <p>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order. 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters. 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments. <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up). <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities. 2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task). 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke. * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. * 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <p>a. Without warning, soldiers—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closed their eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. <p>b. With warning, soldiers—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas. <p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required. k. Extinguished all fires. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational. 4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities. <p>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Contaminated element designation. b. Contaminated element location. c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign. d. Time that the element became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team). <p>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</p> <p>c. Coordinated with supporting units.</p> <p>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected—</p> <p>a. Provided adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Provided good drainage.</p> <p>c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.</p> <p>e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <p>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</p> <p>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</p> <p>c. Established communications with the decontamination element.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</p> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</p> <p>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</p> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Set up the decontamination site.</p> <p>(1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.</p> <p>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area.</p> <p>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</p> <p>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</p> <p>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</p> <p>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> <p>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals).</p> <p>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</p> <p>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station. b. Washed vehicles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down. d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange. <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material). d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange. <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</p> <p>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NEC 4 report) to higher HQ.</p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites. b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ). <p>12. The contaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval. <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible. <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)
 (FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed in a contemporary operating environment. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The element location or identity cannot be determined through aerial or ground surveillance. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot. <p>2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy ground or aerial fires. c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions. <p>3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>Note: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended with the surroundings. c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows. g. Used Camouflage Screen Systems to enhance natural materials. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted. k. Concealed vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy. <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and completed policing of debris or spoil from the area. <p>* 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations. NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission. <p>NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</p> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. <p>NOTE: Air guards are present.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</p> <p>3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover. c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader develops the situation. a. Initiated fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition. d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</p> <p>6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).</p> <p>* 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters

TASK: Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: Digital units send alert messaging and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and/or send reports using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>2. Command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert units. a. Notified all elements. If the element was— (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Unable to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared mines from positions through detonation and departed as soon as feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation and included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed. c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered).</p> <p>3. Vehicle commanders check the immediate area and element personnel remove any mines and trip wires from vehicles. Element personnel— a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Removed trip wires from soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device.</p> <p>NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.</p> <p>c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the rest of the unit was out of the minefield.</p> <p>* 4. Element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes.</p> <p>5. Element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them.</p> <p>a. Used visual means to locate mines and marked the vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The lanes were marked according to the tactical situation and threat; however, marked areas also allowed personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles.</p> <p>b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes (using a grapnel hook or other means) as directed by the company commander. Detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage.</p> <p>* 6. Vehicle commanders direct the personnel that are ground-guiding vehicles out of the minefield.</p> <p>a. Ensured that individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command.</p> <p>b. Ensured that any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire was placed onto vehicles.</p> <p>c. Ensured that individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed them to exit the minefield on their own.</p> <p>7. Company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield.</p> <p>a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes.</p> <p>b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove vehicles or equipment from the minefield.</p> <p>c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred.</p> <p>d. Placed sandbags near mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage.</p> <p>e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance.</p> <p>f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground.</p> <p>8. If the position cannot be evacuated, element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow mission accomplishment.</p> <p>a. Cleared the communication lanes between positions.</p> <p>b. Marked the communication lanes between positions.</p> <p>c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from the detonation.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan Engineer Survivability Operations (05-6-0094)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is supporting continuous operations. The maneuver force has begun planning for a defensive operation. The group or brigade must plan survivability support for the maneuver force. The staff has provided the number and types of survivability positions required (hull or defilade), based on the intelligence estimate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade plans for survivability positions consistent with the maneuver commander's intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The staff receives the mission from the group or brigade commander. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the commander's guidance and intent were understood. b. Completed a staff/engineer estimate. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) determines the group or brigade capability to complete the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Made an assessment of the group or brigade total survivability capabilities based on available equipment assets and the time available to prepare positions. b. Requested additional engineer assets from the corps, if necessary. 3. The commander or staff plans and issues the appropriate operation orders (OPORDs) or fragmentary orders (FRAGOs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Task-organized subordinate units to support the plan. b. Determined the priority of effort and continuously monitored the progress of subordinate units. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2010	Direct the Construction of Fighting Positions in Urban Terrain
052-195-2101	Direct Construction of Wire Entanglements

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Operations and Plans Section
 Communication Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)
 (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions. * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures. * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked. * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers. * 5. The element reports the UXO hazard. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP. b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions. c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter. d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas. e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force. f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks. 2. The element operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established communications with the guard commander. b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter. 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed preplanned positions. b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability. <p>NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms. g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational. <p>* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing. b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out. c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank). e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°. f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. 3. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)
 (FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Organized the element to defensive positions. c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ). <p>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</p> <p>DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Made the engagement decision. f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. <p>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</p> <p>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</p> <p>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</p> <p>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</p> <p>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</p> <p>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</p> <p>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</p> <p>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</p> <p>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p>i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p>	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors. e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ. f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ. g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP. <p>* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques. d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified aerial platforms. g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ. j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed. * 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses. * 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements before all operations. 4. The element carries out safety procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-spot safety corrections. 		
<p>NOTES: 1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0). 2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051)
(FM 10-23) (AR 30-22)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food service support is required. The unit is performing continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander or food service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel. b. Identified locations and times for meals. c. Considered consolidation of subunits. d. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission. e. Determined the type (A-; T-; or meal, ready-to-eat [MRE]) of rations based on mission constraints. * 2. The company commander or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared a feeding report and forwarded the report to the brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the nature of the requirement. (2) Established the date the meals were required. (3) Determined the total number of meals required. (4) Established the time of meal pickup or delivery. (5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery. b. Informed the brigade S4 of any changes that would affect the operation. c. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals. d. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours before the meal. e. Coordinated the times and locations for pickup or delivery. 3. The FSO supervises Class I operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Followed the company standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan. b. Served hot meals as soon after pickup or delivery as possible. c. Ensured that all soldiers had their mess kits available, if used. d. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central-distribution site) if in danger of being attacked. e. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central-distribution site) if attack was unlikely. f. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter intervals to reduce casualty potential. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Ensured that soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack. h. Established washing facilities. i. Disposed of all trash and garbage properly. * 4. The company commander ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed. 5. The FSO ensures that proper signature head count and cash collection procedures are used during the tactical operation. NOTE: One-line entries may be authorized during training in the field where the collection of signatures is impractical as determined by the company commander or the FSO (for example, limited feeding time, troop dispersion, or weather conditions). * 6. The company commander ensures that the food containers are promptly returned and that all trash and garbage is properly disposed of.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)
(FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)
(DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)
(FM 21-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation. (2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures. (3) Explained the warning system, safety, and security procedures. b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis. 2. Company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated the subordinate element data. b. Prepared the PDS. c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC). 3. Company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record. b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156. * 4. Company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA Forms 1155, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC. * 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions. * 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies. b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing. c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</p> <p>* 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions.</p> <p> a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation.</p> <p> b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements.</p> <p> c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA).</p> <p> d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</p> <p>* 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</p> <p> a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP).</p> <p> b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-9.</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader/sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-8 and 2166-8-1.</p> <p> a. Drafted work sheets for the noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist/record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER).</p> <p> b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC.</p> <p> c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.</p> <p>*11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries).</p> <p> a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ.</p> <p> b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.</p> <p>*12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance.</p> <p> a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services.</p> <p> b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.</p> <p>*13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance.</p> <p> a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance.</p> <p> b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan General Engineer Operations (05-6-0096)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-104) (FM 5-116)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) assigns the group or brigade a general engineering support mission in the corps area of operation (AO). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade plans and controls general engineering operations in the corps AO and requests additional engineer assets from the corps, as necessary. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The group or brigade plans general engineering operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received the mission. b. Ensured that the commander's guidance and intent were understood. c. Completed an engineer estimate. * 2. The commander determines the group or brigade capability to complete the mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed the group or brigade total general engineering capabilities based on the available assets. b. Requested additional engineer assets from the theater. * 3. The commander and the staff plans and issues appropriate operation orders (OPORDs)/fragmentary orders (FRAGOs). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Task-organized subordinate units to support the plan. b. Determined the priority of effort and continuously monitored the progress and situation of subordinate units. c. Determined the availability/extent of host nation (HN) support and contract labor in the AO. d. Requested additional engineer support from the corps, as required. 4. The group or brigade performs general engineering operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Made maximum use of existing facilities by subordinate units. b. Used austere design and construction techniques. c. Minimized the United States (US) troop construction effort. d. Ensured the dispersion of facilities and equipment to reduce the need for protective construction. e. Ensured that subordinate units maintained and/or repaired lines of communication (LOC) and/or the main supply route (MSR), as required. f. Ensured that units performed the minimum work required to accomplish the tasks. g. Ensured that units performed the next priority tasks. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The S4 performs logistical staff supervision. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that logistical decisions were disseminated, understood, and executed. b. Analyzed reports and messages for their impact on logistical plans. c. Assisted the staff and troubleshoot missions. d. Advised the commander on the execution of the logistical plan. e. Recommended logistical plan revisions to the commander, as required. 5. The S1 maintains Department of the Army (DA) Form 1594. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Opened and closed DA Form 1594 daily according to the unit SOP. b. Made entries pertaining to significant events, information, messages, and documents. c. Reviewed the entries to ensure that information was correct and complete. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
 (FM 12-6) (FM 3-21.38)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. b. Identified casualty collection points. c. Identified transport requirements. d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element. g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel. h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP. <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.05-T01A for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Reported casualties. c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <p>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury.</p> <p>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <p>a. Identified the litter teams.</p> <p>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</p> <p>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</p> <p>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <p>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</p> <p>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <p>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38.</p> <p>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</p> <p>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TACSOP, if required.</p> <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <p>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</p> <p>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</p> <p>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <p>a. Assumed MOPP4.</p> <p>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location.</p> <p>d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</p> <p>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Command Section

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)
(FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support. * 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP. * 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation. * 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders. d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment. e. Conducted after-action debriefings. f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51. g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies. <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element. <p>6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Detachment Headquarters

TASK: Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)
 (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TACSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum-essential actions. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element commander directs unit supply operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand. c. Inspected unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to battalion guidance and the TACSOP or both sustainment controls. * 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets. b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand. c. Developed the supply storage plans. d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures. e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition. f. Prepared input to the materiel condition status reports (MCSR). 3. Supply personnel request additional supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated requirements with the elements. b. Calculated resupply requirements. c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register. d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). 4. Supply personnel receive supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition. b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register. c. Stored supplies according to storage plans. d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance. d. Maintained the prescribed copies of the transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives. 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies. b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4. c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms. d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational-repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Communication Section

TASK: Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)
(TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12. e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12. f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP). g. Connected local and trunk wire lines. 2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation. b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader. c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain. d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. e. Tagged the wire ties. f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation. g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. 3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational. b. Processed calls. c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established. 5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
 Operations and Plans Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel Voice Radio Station (AM) (11-5-0101.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-18) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been given signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) extracts, a current key list or appropriate keying device (if secure speech equipment is authorized), a radio net diagram, a map, and the grid coordinates of the net control station (NCS) and other stations. Situational hazards such as a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) environment; limited visibility; weather; and opposing forces (OPFOR) may exist. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The radio is installed at a designated location according to the times in the operation plan (OPLAN) or the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The team chief selects the site for the equipment placement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the site for the antenna masts. b. Ensured that the location provided the best possible cover and concealment. c. Ensured that the location provided the best possible physical security. d. Ensured that the location provided access to at least one escape route from the OPFOR. e. Established and maintained physical security or control of communications security (COMSEC) materials and documents containing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI). <p>2. The team installs the radio set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked the set before operation. b. Ensured that grounding connections were proper. c. Ensured that cable connections were proper. d. Extracted the appropriate call signals, suffixes, and frequency from the SOI and the SSI. e. Completed all necessary presets. f. Loaded encryption devices. <p>3. The team places the radio set into operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented preliminary starting procedures. b. Conducted starting procedures. c. Conducted tuning procedures. d. Entered the radio net and correctly authenticated. e. Performed during-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). <p>4. The team extends the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Constructed a doublet antenna. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Oriented the antenna broadside to the most distant station. c. Ensured that the service selector switch was in the standby position. d. Accomplished the transition from the whip antenna to the doublet antenna with minimum interruption of service. e. Connected the antenna lead-in to the radio set. f. Referred to the doublet frequency chart for the antenna load and tune presets. g. Tuned the radio set to the doublet antenna. h. Conducted a communications check with a distant station. <p>5. The team installs the radio set at a remote site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared a remote control grip for operation. b. Connected local control to the radio set. c. Installed field wire to the remote site. d. Connected the remote control to the field wire. e. Conducted an operational check. <p>6. The team installs the generator set, if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted preoperational PMCS. b. Grounded the generator set. c. Connected the power cable. d. Performed starting procedures. e. Started the generator set. f. Accomplished the transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications. g. Constructed a sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize the heat signal. h. Established the fire point. i. Established the fuel point. <p>7. The team employs preventive electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Minimized transmission. b. Transmitted quickly and precisely. c. Used an antenna with the shortest feasible range. d. Used a directional antenna. e. Selected a site that masked the transmitted signal from enemy interception. f. Practiced the proper radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. g. Encrypted all EEFI data. h. Used COMSEC equipment when available. <p>8. The team implements remedial ECCM techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was from an internal or external source. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional. d. Notified the immediate supervisor of suspected jamming. e. Continued to operate. f. Adjusted or changed antennas. g. Used an alternate communications route. h. Requested a frequency change. i. Submitted a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report. <p>9. The team assumes NCS duties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Challenged and required that stations in the net reply as required by the SOI and SSI. b. Opened and closed the net. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Controlled the entry and departure of stations. d. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures. e. Imposed or lifted the station listening silence. f. Controlled a directed net. g. Passed all interference reports to the signal officer as soon as possible.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Communication Section

TASK: Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)
 (TM 11-5805-294-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain. b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance. c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines. d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task. e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system. f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users. <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM. e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM. f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram. g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines. <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Installed the distribution box. b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction. <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM. <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Process Personnel and Administrative Actions (12-1-0406.05-T01A)

(AR 25-50)
(DA FORM 638)

(AR 27-10)
(FM 12-6)

(DA FORM 31)
(FM 7-22.7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is performing its combat mission. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for personnel actions are being received. Distribution, Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) actions, and hometown news releases are being received. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel actions are processed as soon as possible in keeping with the tactical situation in a manner that precludes adverse morale implications. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The personnel and administration center (PAC) collects requests from supported companies and higher headquarters (HQ). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged receipt of all actions. b. Verified actions to ensure their validity and need. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. 2. The PAC processes information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritized all personnel actions. b. Prepared appropriate personnel forms. c. Reviewed actions for accuracy and completeness. d. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. e. Advised soldiers. * 3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) or PAC supervisor processes actions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed technical and administrative reviews. b. Corrected minor errors. c. Approved or recommended approval. d. Dispatched actions to higher HQ for further processing. * 4. The S1 or PAC supervisor disseminates information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the commander on the status of personnel actions. b. Informed subordinate companies and soldiers on the status of personnel actions. 5. The PAC processes award recommendations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed recommendations for awards. b. Processed Department of the Army (DA) Forms 638. c. Forwarded the recommendations to the approving authority. d. Suspended a copy of the recommendation for award. e. Forwarded approved awards to the unit commander for presentation at an appropriate ceremony (when the situation permitted). 6. The PAC processes leave requests. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processed DA Forms 31. b. Maintained a leave control log. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Forwarded required copies of DA Form 31 to the Finance Support Command (FSC), as appropriate.</p> <p>7. The PAC processes standard installation/division personnel system (SIDPERS) input.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared input. b. Reviewed transactions for accuracy and completeness. c. Obtained required signatures for transmittal. <p>8. The PAC manages the evaluation reporting system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated evaluation report shells. b. Established an internal suspense for each evaluation report. c. Forwarded evaluation work sheets to the appropriate subordinate units. d. Reviewed returned evaluation reports for completeness and accuracy. e. Prepared evaluation reports, if required. f. Returned completed evaluation reports for the required signatures. g. Checked returned evaluation reports to ensure that signatures and dates were correct. h. Forwarded completed evaluation reports to the personnel service company (PSC). <p>9. The PAC provides administrative support.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a suspense control. b. Typed all standing operating procedures (SOPs) and correspondence for the battalion commander, the executive officer (XO), and the units (including memorandums, letters, endorsements, accident reports, and forms). c. Operated reproduction equipment. d. Maintained reproduction equipment. e. Picked up distribution from higher HQ. f. Sorted distribution. g. Secured distribution. h. Processed distribution from staff sections and subordinate and attached units. i. Maintained required blank forms and publications. <p>10. The PAC processes promotion recommendations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified soldier eligibility. b. Forwarded a list of names of eligible soldiers to the subordinate units. c. Forwarded promotion recommendations to the appropriate promotion authority. d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders (individual, personnel, and finance). e. Initiated further command actions when required. <p>11. The PAC processes letters of reprimand.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the facts that support the imposition of the letter of reprimand. b. Prepared the letter of reprimand for the commander's signature. c. Prepared the notification letter to the individual advising him of his rights. <p>12. The PAC processes letters of indebtedness.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gathered all documents and facts bearing on the claimed indebtedness of the soldier. b. Prepared the letter for the commander's signature to the agency or individual claiming the debt. c. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Followed up, if necessary. e. Referred the soldier to the division Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor for legal assistance and preparation of response to debtors. <p>13. The PAC processes letters of nonsupport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the type of letter to be prepared based on all facts gathered. b. Determined all information bearing on the claimed nonsupport by the soldier. c. Prepared the letter for the commander's or soldier's signature. d. Dispatched the letter to the agency or individual claiming nonsupport. <p>14. The PAC processes other adverse actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all facts and supporting documents were available. b. Prepared the required administrative documents. c. Forwarded the packet to the appropriate authority for action. <p>15. The PAC provides financial assistance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processed related documents. b. Distributed net pay advice (NPA) and leave and earnings statements (LESSs). c. Resolved less-complicated pay problems. d. Answered pay-related inquires. e. Provided liaison and coordination with the supporting FSC. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Provide Legal Support (12-1-0410.05-T01A)

(AR 27-10)	(AR 15-6)	(AR 190-47)
(AR 27-1)	(AR 27-20)	(AR 600-20)
(AR 600-8-2)	(AR 600-85)	(AR 635-200)
(DD FORM 457)	(DOD REG 5500.7-R)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is deployed and conducting combat operations. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Requests for legal support have been received. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) provides legal support to the command according to the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), other laws and directives, the Manual for Courts-Martial (MCM), and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion legal noncommissioned officer (NCO) or specialist provides the battalion commander with the current status of legal matters, to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Courts-martial actions and dispositions. b. Nonjudicial proceedings. c. Administrative separation actions. d. Formal and informal investigations. e. Other adverse administrative actions, such as bars to reenlistment or letters of reprimand. 2. The battalion legal NCO or specialist assists subordinate commanders and soldiers. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with subordinate units to assist in the disposition of court and board actions. b. Prepared charge sheets, allied papers, confinement orders, and the commander's actions. c. Recorded and prepared proceedings of Article 32(b) investigations (Department of Defense [DD] Form 457). d. Prepared records of nonjudicial punishment. e. Reviewed records of nonjudicial punishment forwarded by subordinate units. f. Processed appeals of nonjudicial punishment and monitored posting of records to personnel and financial files. g. Prepared notifications of administrative separation. h. Recorded and prepared records of board proceedings related to administrative separations. i. Prepared, processed, and monitored the administrative separation actions. j. Recorded and prepared records of trial for special courts-martial. k. Prepared and processed records of trial for summary courts-martial. l. Prepared, processed, and monitored the suspension of favorable personnel actions. 3. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the brigade legal NCO for legal services from the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) or brigade legal advisor. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Acted as a liaison between subordinate units and the SJA section. b. Assisted the legal assistance officer in preparing powers of attorney, wills, and other legal assistance documents. c. Assisted the claims judge advocate with claims investigations and assisted in the preparation of claims forms, to include forwarding them for appropriate disposition. d. Forwarded documents for review by administrative law and contract law personnel. e. Assisted judge advocates with military justice, international law, and operational law training. f. Assisted the trial counsel in preparing pretrial, trial, and posttrial documents. g. Arranged for witnesses and other necessary personnel to be present at the courts-martial. h. Assisted in processing of posttrial prisoners for confinement. <p>4. The battalion legal NCO or specialist coordinates with the trial defense service for defense counsel services.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Arranged for advice by counsel for nonjudicial punishment proceedings. b. Arranged for consultation with counsel for administrative separations or representation. <p>* 5. The battalion commander administers the UCMJ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Returned charges to the subordinate commander for other disposition. d. Referred charges to trial by summary court or forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial. <p>* 6. The battalion commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated, forwarded, approved, or returned letters of reprimand/admonition. b. Approved, disapproved, or forwarded administrative separations. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct the Command Religious-Support Program (16-1-1001.05-T01A)
(FM 1-05)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaged in combat operations. Casualties have occurred. Requests for religious support have been received. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The command and soldier religious-support needs are promptly met. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit ministry team (UMT) prepares the religious-support plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the battalion commander's guidance. b. Assessed the religious needs of the command. c. Coordinated for direct religious support (DRS) and general religious support (GRS). d. Provided the coordinating staff with the required input to the plans and the orders. e. Provided the UMT with the input to the religious-support annex of higher-echelon operations and plans. f. Prepared and disseminated the battalion religious-support plan. g. Reviewed the casualty data. 2. The UMT performs or provides religious support, rites, and services. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided worship services; memorial ceremonies to honor the dead; and services for the sacraments, rites, and ordinances. b. Ensured that mass or emergency burials were conducted with reverential handling of the remains, appropriate religious burials, and the proper military honors. c. Provided DRS to battalion headquarters personnel. 3. The UMT performs pastoral care to the soldiers. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided pastoral care to counter battlefield shock and trauma. b. Conducted pastoral counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale. c. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue. d. Conducted specialized counseling to lessen stress and enhance morale and performance. e. Provided care and counseling functions. f. Conducted pastoral care to casualties during intense battles. 4. The UMT advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided direct, personally verified information on the morale and moral climate of the command. b. Briefed the commander on the moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership. c. Informed the commander, personally, on the impact of unit policies; unjust, disruptive, and potentially disruptive social patterns; and any possible violations of the laws of war. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Advised the commander on specific religious requirements of the soldiers and the policies or procedures affecting their right to free exercise of religion.</p> <p>5. The UMT advises the commander on ethical issues.</p> <p>a. Advised the commander on methods of improving the ethical climate within the unit.</p> <p>b. Briefed on the ethical aspects of policies and leadership.</p> <p>c. Briefed the commander on the training of soldiers in ethical and moral decision making.</p> <p>d. Used preaching, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction, to reaffirm the value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth and to challenge soldiers to serve their country honorably.</p> <p>e. Served as the ethical advocate to the commander in preventing the mistreatment of friendly troops, enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), and civilians; the violation of morality codes; the desecration of sacred places; the disrespect for human life; and illegal acts.</p> <p>6. The UMT advises the commander on indigenous religions.</p> <p>a. Assisted the civil-military operations officer in analyzing religious and cultural factors in basic doctrines, religious structures, and symbols and practices of the principal faith and the significance of sacred shrines, temples, and holy places.</p> <p>b. Advised the command of the indigenous religions of the local population and their impact on the unit mission.</p> <p>c. Assisted the command in developing friendly relations with local religious groups and civilians.</p> <p>d. Met the human-welfare needs produced by combat.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Operations and Plans Section

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element searches the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken. 2. The element segregates the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels. 3. The element silences the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline. 4. The element safeguards the EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely. 5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property. 6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Administration/Logistical Section
 Communication Section
 Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)
 (FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP. b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available. d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness. f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness. g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO). h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO. i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced. * 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance. b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program. c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant. d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant.</p> <p>f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</p> <p>g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.</p> <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <p>a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs.</p> <p>b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability.</p> <p>c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used.</p> <p>d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</p> <p>e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.</p> <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel.</p> <p>a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities.</p> <p>b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</p> <p>c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references.</p> <p>d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used.</p> <p>e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals.</p> <p>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available.</p> <p>g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance.</p> <p>h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs.</p> <p>i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used.</p> <p>j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals.</p> <p>k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader.</p> <p>l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.</p> <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <p>a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment.</p> <p>b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk.</p> <p>c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs.</p> <p>d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available.</p> <p>e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</p> <p>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available.</p> <p>g. Performed controlled exchanges.</p> <p>h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</p> <p>i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.</p> <p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <p>a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher.</p> <p>b. Corrected unit level deficiencies.</p> <p>c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.</p> <p>d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance.</p> <p>e. Verified the completion of repairs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs. 7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions. a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for element equipment. c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items. d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. 8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle. b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation. c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site. e. Established local security at the recovery site. f. Removed casualties from vehicles. g. Treated casualties. h. Requested medical assistance, if required. i. Evacuated casualties, if required. j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required. k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible. l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures. m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander. n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment. o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** Section
 Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (05-1-0008)
 (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPOrd. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The element is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPOrd follows the commander's intent and contains all information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander writes an OPOrd following the five-paragraph format. NOTE: Digital elements can write the OPOrd and perform planning functions using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the heading contained the task organization. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Included all engineer headquarters (HQ) of the elements under the brigade control. (2) Included all engineer HQ of organic elements if the OPOrd was the initial order for the operation. (3) Listed companies and special platoons that were task-organized to HQ other than their parent element. (4) Listed special equipment if it was not clear in the unit task organization. (5) Streamlined command and control (C2). (6) Addressed command support relationships. b. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about enemy forces (terrain, weather, and enemy situation), friendly forces (higher and adjacent), attachments, and detachments. c. Ensured that the mission was clearly stated, to include who (battalion organization), what, when, where, and why (includes higher mission). d. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the battalion commander's intent with linkage to higher intent, subordinate element tasks and instructions, and coordinating instructions. e. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) instructions and arrangements for supporting units. Used an annex, if lengthy. Otherwise, used the following paragraph 4 sample format: 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>-----</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>a. General concept of logistics support.</p> <p>b. Materiel and services.</p> <p> (1) Supply.</p> <p> (2) Transportation.</p> <p> (3) Services.</p> <p>c. Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>d. Personnel.</p> <p>e. Civil-military cooperation.</p> <p>f. Miscellaneous.</p> <p>-----</p> <p>f. Ensured that the command-and-signal paragraph specified the following:</p> <p> (1) Command.</p> <p> (a) Command post (CP) and key leader locations during the operation and planned movements.</p> <p> (b) Locations and planned movements of higher C2.</p> <p> (c) The logistical chain of command.</p> <p> (2) Signal.</p> <p> (a) The communication/signal differences not covered in the standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p> (b) The critical reporting requirements not covered in the SOP.</p> <p> (c) The designated nets for mission and routine reports.</p> <p>* 2. The commander ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The commander ensures that the order is disseminated/briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-third rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)
05-3-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section

TASK: Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission. b. Determined the availability of organic resources. c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element. b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit. c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete. d. Included the following information in the request: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Type of relationship (command or support). (2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed. (3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission. (4) Mission of the battalion. (5) Mission of the augmentation support element. 3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element. b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company. <p>5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the element to maintain high morale. <p>6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ. <p>Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Detachment Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018)

(FM 5-10)
(FM 5-422)

(FM 101-5)
(FM 5-71-2)

(FM 3-90.1)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD) to perform operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to perform a map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO, or an OPORD from its higher headquarters (HQ). He determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.</p> <p>NOTE: Digital units send and receive orders using the ABCS or FM means according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues a WO to subordinate leaders.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Stated the mission (nature of the operation). Identified the task organization. Stated the time of the operation. Provided any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs). Stated the element timeline. <p>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Developed the plan based on METT-TC factors. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured the equipment based on the mission, to include checking rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission. <p>4. The element continues assembly area activities and security.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Maintained equipment and weapons. Performed personal hygiene. Resupplied equipment and materiel, to include small arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and refueling of vehicles. Rehearsed battle and crew drills. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Performed weapon test firing. f. Ate. g. Rested. h. Maintained security.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. NOTE: Subordinate leaders move the element in the absence of the element leader. This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader performs a reconnaissance. NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and DTSS products from higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Performed a map reconnaissance, as a minimum, along with subordinate leaders when practical. b. Performed a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical. (2) Identified the critical areas of the mission. (3) Moved as far forward as the time and situation permitted.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan. a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance. b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available equipment, personnel, and materiel. c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or OPORD format, to subordinate and attached leaders. The order contained the following information and could be given to the entire element at the same time. a. SITUATION. (1) Enemy forces. (2) Friendly forces. (3) Attachments and detachments. b. MISSION. c. EXECUTION. (1) Concept of the operation. (a) Scheme of maneuver. (b) Fires. (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance. (d) Intelligence. (e) Engineer support. (f) Air defense. (g) Information operations. (2) Subunit tasks. (3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum, the element leader must address the— (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective. (b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR). (c) Risk reduction control measures. NOTE: The element leader determines the risk reduction control measures by using the five steps of the risk management process, referring to Field Manual (FM) 101-5 for additional information. (d) Rules of engagement. (e) Environmental considerations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(f) Force protection.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>(1) Support concept.</p> <p>(2) Materials and services.</p> <p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(4) Personnel.</p> <p>(5) Civil military.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command.</p> <p>(a) The location of the element leadership, support element leadership, and command posts for the operation.</p> <p>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element SOP or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</p> <p>(2) Signal.</p> <p>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</p> <p>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</p> <p>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</p> <p>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</p> <p>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</p> <p>* 9. Subordinate leaders complete the PCCs, and element leaders perform the PCIs.</p> <p>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can perform the PCCs on receipt of a WO or FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>a. Checked and inventoried equipment, ensured that the items were serviceable and that the element had the items specified in the unit SOP and the items required for specific mission.</p> <p>b. Ensured that adequate resupply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines were available.</p> <p>c. Performed a communications check.</p> <p>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that weapons were test fired.</p> <p>e. Ensured that personnel understood their task and purpose and that of the element headquarters.</p> <p>f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.</p> <p>*10. Leaders perform at least one type of rehearsal.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Estimate (05-6-0002)
 (FM 5-34) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100)
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. The group or brigade has received an operation order (OPORD) with a mission from its higher headquarters (HQ). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer estimate gives the commander feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of support. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander, aided by his staff, performs a mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). b. Identified the intent of the immediate commander and the commander two levels up. c. Identified the area of operations (AO). d. Identified the tasks to perform, including both specified and implied, and decides which are essential to success. e. Identified constraints and restraints. f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why. * 2. The commander, aided by his staff, performs a situation analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the composition of supported forces, unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission. b. Identified the characteristics of the AO and the enemy situation. c. Analyzed weather conditions, terrain, equipment, and troops available to support the mission. d. Assessed specific capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacing remotely delivered mines. e. Predicted possible enemy COA. * 3. The commander and staff evaluate their own unit situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the disposition of major tactical elements, possible COA, and current projected operations. b. Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting the engineer operations. c. Identified the disposition and capabilities of battalion elements, estimated completion times of current tasks, and combat support (CS) units to assist with engineer tasks. * 4. The group or brigade commander, aided by his staff, develops an engineer plan for the maneuver force to support each COA. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identified requirements, to include all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them, by each location or by each supported element.</p> <p>b. Summarized resource requirements by platoon hours, equipment, and logistics for each location or supported unit.</p> <p>c. Determined general priorities for tasks based on the higher commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Employed engineer forces to accomplish the commander's guidance and all tasks.</p> <p>* 5. The commander, aided by his staff, war-games the engineer plan for each COA.</p> <p>a. Evaluated the engineer plan against significant factors impacting it.</p> <p>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</p> <p>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan along with assistance from the supported unit Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <p>* 6. The group or brigade commander, aided by his staff, compares each COA and selects the one that best accomplishes the mission and the supporting scheme of support.</p> <p>a. Determined the technique to use in the comparison.</p> <p>b. Used the significant factors that were identified during the war-gaming process.</p> <p>c. Selected the best COA based on subjective judgment, and not entirely upon numerical technique.</p> <p>* 7. The group or brigade commander states his decision clearly to his subordinates.</p> <p>a. Determined the group or brigade task organization and allocated resources.</p> <p>b. Assigned tasks to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 8. The group or brigade commander makes a recommendation to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Stated which COA his troops can best support from the engineer perspective.</p> <p>b. Identified major deficiencies that the higher HQ must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing the deficiencies.</p> <p>c. Recommended the engineer task organization, command/support relationship, tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-6-0003)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations. The commander and staff must prepare an engineer annex as part of the maneuver unit operation order (OPORD). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer annex contains essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The annex concept is clear and understood by the maneuver force. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The staff engineer selects an engineer format based on the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and the guidance from the maneuver unit Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3)/Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Wrote the annex using the five-paragraph format. b. Included overlays of existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures, known and templated enemy obstacles, and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC)-contaminated areas. c. Prepared an obstacle list containing all directed obstacles. 2. The staff ensures that the annex includes the information that was derived during the estimate process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the annex contained information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the order. b. Ensured that the annex did not contain items covered in the standing operation procedure (SOP) unless needed for clarity. c. Ensured that the annex was directed at the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit and not just at the engineers. d. Ensured that the annex was clear, complete, brief, and timely and avoided qualified directives. e. Ensured that the annex was integrated fully with other parts of the OPORD. f. Coordinated all tasks directed at units, other than the engineers, before issuing the annex. g. Coordinated with the appropriate battle staff element before including the annex. 3. The staff engineer ensures that the written annex complies with the five-paragraph format. The OPORD— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stated the enemy and friendly situations and the situation of attachments and detachments. b. Stated the mission (same as the maneuver unit being supported). c. Stated the execution of the mission, to include coordinating instructions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Stated service support requirements, such as command-regulated classes of supply, engineer forward supply points, haul assets, and host nation (HN) support. e. Stated command and signal instructions, to include the location of the command post (CP), the call signs of the supporting units from another headquarters (HQ), and any alternate means of communication.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Develop an Area Damage Control (ADC) Plan (05-6-0029)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is located in the division or corps rear area or communication zone (COMMZ). The higher headquarters (HQ) prioritizes area damage control (ADC) tasks and assigns them to the group or brigade. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ADC plan minimizes the effects of an enemy attack on the area. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element establishes communications with the supported unit rear-area operation center (RAOC). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored the communications link constantly to afford immediate response to the supported unit. b. Coordinated engineer unit plans with the ADC requirements of the supported command element. * 2. The group or brigade commander and staff use information from the engineer estimate to plan and develop their strategies. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified and prioritized all potential ADC tasks. b. Determined what specialized engineer support, beyond the group or brigade capability, may be required. 3. The staff determines preventive actions to take before an incident. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stockpiled materials. b. Located alternate routes. c. Identified replacement facilities for critical buildings. d. Identified host nation (HN) assets and other units required and/or available. e. Tasked an engineer unit to perform ADC missions, starting with the highest priority. f. Specified the quality and the extent of repair standards. * 4. The commander ensures that the tasked units perform preventive missions before events occur (rehearsals). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed on-site reconnaissance. b. Developed repair and contingency plans. c. Established communications links with the supported element. d. Requested required assets from higher echelons and coordinated for linkup. 5. The group or brigade staff, upon request, reviewed unit and base cluster ADC plans. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Control Operations (05-6-0062)
 (FM 71-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1)
 (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous field operations. The group or brigade receives a mission and issues the necessary written or verbal fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to its subordinate units. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander controls and directs the group or brigade according to the OPORD concept of operations, maintains unit status, and maneuvers the engineer force where needed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The group or brigade establishes functional command post (CP) elements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established and operated CPs. The unit may collocate the tactical and main CPs for better coordination and execution. b. Established and operated a rear CP according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), functions, and configurations described in Field Manual (FM) 71-100. The main CP performed logistics functions if the logistics CP was not established as a separate element. c. Maintained continuous communication with subordinate and higher headquarters (HQ). d. Maintained necessary liaison with higher and adjacent HQ. e. Ensured survivability of CPs through effective dispersion, camouflage, security, and fortification. Displaced the group or brigade CP as often as the tactical situation permitted. f. Integrated staff engineers, if applicable, into division CPs, providing necessary personnel and equipment. g. Established and operated the unit trains. 2. The staff sections receive accurate and timely reports from subordinate units according to the unit field standing operating procedures (FSOP), using the prescribed format, frequency, and content. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tracked and monitored activities of subordinate elements. b. Received the reports by courier and/or frequency-modulated (FM) radio. c. Submitted accurate and timely reports to higher HQ using the prescribed format. 3. The staff section supervises the operations of subordinate elements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed information and data from subordinate elements reports, intelligence, or taskings from higher HQ. b. Updated the estimate and current situation and advised the commander. c. Anticipated future engineer requirements as the situation developed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Revised and coordinated the execution of the engineer plan. e. Developed and issued FRAGOs or OPORDs to subordinate units. f. Coordinated and synchronized tactical operations and logistics support for subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-6-0064)
 (FM 101-5) (DA FORM 1594)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations in a tactical or nontactical environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade establishes and operates tactical, main, alternate, and rear CPs to control engineer forces in the deep, close, and rear fight for 24-hour operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The group or brigade operates a tactical CP. The tactical CP— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained, as a minimum, the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) and the Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) section. The G3 was responsible for the operations of the tactical CP. b. Was located near subordinate units to allow the commander to influence the battle. c. Maintained communication with forward units, the main CP, and higher headquarters (HQ) at all times. d. Supervised the execution of engineer operations and maintained the current engineer situation. 2. The G2 or Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) provides the commander and his staff with intelligence information to base current tactical decisions. 3. The group or brigade operates a main CP. The main CP— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Was located well to the rear of forward deployed forces, generally out of enemy artillery range. b. Maintained continuous communications with forward elements, the tactical CP, and higher HQ at all times. c. Sustained current operations and planned for future operations. 4. The group or brigade operates a rear CP. The rear CP— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided CP for administrative and logistic support to combat operations established at corps and above. b. Maintained unit strength status. c. Exercised staff supervision of personnel service support. d. Supported development and maintenance of troop morale. e. Performed staff functions concerning discipline, law, and order. f. Planned and supervised supply, services, maintenance, and transportation activities to support the command. g. Performed actions to enhance the relationship between the command, local authorities, and the populace. 5. The CP configures to support 24-hour operation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Assumed the responsibilities of another CP if one was destroyed (such as the main CP assumes control of the close battle in the event the tactical CP is destroyed). b. Maintained a staff journal, a situation map, and an information display to facilitate mission accomplishment.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Reported his departure to the visited commander upon completion of the mission. 5. The LO briefs the parent unit commander upon his return. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed information concerning the mission from higher HQ, unit locations, future operations, and the commander's intent. b. Transmitted mission requirements and/or requests for information from the visited HQ. c. Briefed representatives from all staff sections on the information received during the liaison visit. d. Remained abreast of the situation, and prepared to respond to future liaison requirements. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Conduct Base Cluster Operations (05-6-0068)
 (FM 3-90)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is in the division rear, corps rear, or communication zone (COMMZ) under an enemy threat Level I, II, or III. The group or brigade commander is the base cluster commander and receives guidance from the rear-area operations center (RAOC) on the geographical area of the cluster and the bases located in the cluster. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade implements control measures, ensuring continuous coordination and communication. The group or brigade defends the base cluster without incurring casualties or damage, due to an inadequate defensive plan or defensive measures. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The base cluster commander, aided by the staff, organizes the defense for the bases in the cluster.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed an assessment of the strengths and weakness of the base defense. b. Ensured that obstacles and all other defensive measures were used. c. Requested, through the base defense liaison team (BDLT), the repositioning of bases unable to provide mutual support. d. Specified the closure time for bases requiring repositioning. <p>2. The group or brigade establishes a base cluster operations center (BCOC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Collocated the BCOC with the main group or brigade command post (CP). b. Arranged liaison with the bases in the cluster. c. Maintained a current rear-operations map for the cluster area of operations (AO). d. Informed the RAOC and supporting military police (MP) of rear operations in the cluster. <p>3. The BCOC develops a base cluster defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained base defense plans from the bases in the cluster and reviewed them for compatibility with the base cluster defense plan. b. Incorporated fire support, reaction forces, MP assistance, internal command and control (C2), and initial defense response against an enemy attack. c. Provided a copy (with changes) of the base cluster defense plan to the supporting RAOC through the BDLT. <p>4. The BCOC establishes and maintains continuous communications with the base defense operations center (BDOC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established field telephone wire communications with the BDOC (primary). b. Obtained radio call signs and frequencies of the bases (alternate). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Prepared and maintained access rosters for personnel authorized to pick up and carry message traffic. 5. The BCOC establishes and maintains continuous communications with the supporting RAOC, using organic communications equipment or a relay with other units in the rear-battle net. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled the defense of the base cluster when under attack. b. Coordinated the use and deployment of base cluster reaction forces. c. Requested the support of adjoining units, MP, or the tactical combat force through the BDLT. d. Coordinated the use of MP or the tactical combat force with the BDLT and the RAOC. e. Coordinated the employment of the base cluster reaction forces, MP, and/or the tactical combat force with the supported BDOC. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Communication Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Plan Engineer Operations (05-6-0070)
 (FM 101-5) (FM 3-0) (FM 3-34.2)
 (FM 3-90) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-102)
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is supporting continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade plans engineer operations according to the operation order (OPORD) of the higher headquarters (HQ) and the commander's intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The staff receives the mission from the group or brigade commander. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and understood the commander's intent and guidance. b. Prepared the engineer estimate. 2. The staff prepares the engineer annex to the OPORD/operation plan (OPLAN), consistent with the concept of the operations and the commander's intent. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned mobility operations, to include engineer effort to maneuver elements. b. Planned for the allocation of reserve bridge stocks to subordinate engineer units for follow-on bridging operations. c. Planned countermobility operations, to include obstacle belts and intent, deceptive engineer operations, and lines of communication (LOC) (logistic routes) and/or main supply route (MSR) maintenance. d. Received subordinate unit obstacle plans and incorporated them into the group or brigade obstacle database. e. Planned survivability operations, to include vehicle fighting positions and protective bunkers and shelters for command posts (CP) and combat service support (CSS) elements. f. Planned general engineering, to include area damage control (ADC) operations and the construction and repair of facilities within the area of operations (AO). g. Planned for topographic operations (to include terrain analysis), expedient mapping, and map storage and distribution. 3. The staff prepares fragmentary orders (FRAGOs), tasking subordinate units and units under group or brigade control in support of the engineer plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided extracts from more detailed orders or changes to previous orders. b. Ensured that FRAGOs had the proper classification, indicated task organization changes, included a brief outline of the situation, and provided brief and specific instructions without the loss of clarity. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
05-6-0029	Develop an Area Damage Control (ADC) Plan
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations
05-6-0092	Plan Engineer Countermobility Operations
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations
05-6-0125	Plan Engineer Mobility Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Control Engineer Operations (05-6-0072)
 (FM 71-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-0)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-102)
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade controls engineer operations to ensure that the subordinate unit mission is accomplished. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The group or brigade staff receives the mission from the group or brigade commander or higher headquarters (HQ). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and understood the commander's intent and guidance. b. Prepared an engineer estimate. 2. The group or brigade staff prepares the engineer annex to the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD), consistent with the concept of operations and the commander's intent. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued the engineer OPORD to subordinate units. b. Ensured that subordinate units executed the mission according to the OPORD given by the higher HQ. 3. The group or brigade staff monitors and tracks personnel and logistics systems of subordinate units and the mission status. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored and tracked engineer missions, to include engineer effort. b. Monitored and tracked engineer countermobility missions. c. Monitored and tracked engineer survivability missions. d. Monitored and tracked general engineering missions. e. Monitored and tracked engineer topographic missions. 4. The group or brigade staff reports to the higher HQ staff according to established reporting procedures. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported personnel status. b. Reported logistics maintenance status. c. Reported mission status. d. Reported the nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) status. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Control Area Damage Control Operations (05-6-0074)
 (FM 5-104) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-90)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is in support of division, corps, or theater operations. Enemy nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) intent is unknown. The unit has been issued an operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD) and has been directed to assist the rear-area operations center (RAOC) commander in planning for area damage control (ADC) operations. The group or brigade, with at least some of their subordinate units, will be operating in the rear area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade will plan for reducing the probability of damage and minimizing its effects on operations according to the appropriate field manuals (FMs). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

NOTE: Engineer units function in a staff advisory role for ADC planning. The staff has primary responsibility for ADC planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The commander provides initial planning guidance. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the guidance and intent of the higher HQ was understood. b. Established a constant communication link with all staff elements. 2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) performs a mission analysis. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that two-thirds of the available time was given to the subordinate units for planning and troop-leading procedures. b. Identified all troops available for the operations. c. Identified specific tasks from the higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD. d. Identified implied tasks. e. Identified all essential tasks necessary to accomplish the mission. f. Identified constraints on the group or brigade actions. g. Restated the mission. h. Issued a warning order to subordinate units. 3. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) identifies the threat that the division or corps is facing and the effects that it will have on rear-battle operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed intelligence information received from higher, lower, and adjacent units. b. Obtained information on probable threat organizations and their capabilities. 4. The S3 determines repair priorities based on the theater commander's guidance. 5. The S3 directs subordinate units to provide assistance to base and base cluster commanders in their individual area of operations (AOs). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The S3 provides assistance to the RAOC commander in preparation of the ADC plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the bases and base clusters ADC plans. b. Developed centralized planning for the use of engineer assets to augment base and base cluster capabilities. c. Ensured that ADC plans were compatible with engineer capabilities. d. Ensured that bases and base clusters maximized internal assets before engineer assets were committed. e. Made recommendations to the RAOC for the efficient use of engineer assets. f. Made recommendations to the RAOC on ways to reduce the probability of damage. g. Provided engineer assistance before incidents. <p>7. The S3 performs damage assessment planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the amount, location, and type of facilities that are most critical to the support of forward forces. b. Determined which facilities were most susceptible to damage from each type of expected incident. c. Deployed survey teams once damage had occurred. <p>8. The S3 directs subordinate units to perform cleanup tasks after damage has occurred.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that tasks were performed by established priorities. b. Ensured that cleanup efforts were performed according to ADC plans. c. Ensured that engineers were effectively employed according to engineer capabilities. <p>9. The S3 supports large-scale decontamination operations when the situation warrants.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the NBC unit that had overall responsibility. b. Performed route reconnaissance of alternate routes to avoid contamination of main supply routes (MSRs) and lines of communication (LOC). c. Assisted in the reconnaissance and site selection process by informing the NBC unit of engineer capabilities and requirements. d. Assisted the NBC unit in site preparation as directed by the OPORD. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Detachment Headquarters
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section

TASK: Control Mobilization and Deployment Operations (05-6-0078)
 (FORSCOM REG 500-3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is located at its home station (HS) and has received orders from the higher headquarters (HQ) for mobilization and deployment. The unit has implemented a mobilization and deployment plan. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit executes its mobilization and deployment plan before departing its HS en route to the mobilization station or port of embarkation (POE). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The group or brigade receives the mobilization and deployment order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executed alert procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Performed personnel accountability procedures, to include screening personnel records and identifying personnel who are nondeployable. c. Updated the Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) database and provided final personnel reports. d. Updated the HS activities plan. e. Identified advance party personnel. f. Coordinated the arrival of additional assets and the movement of personnel and equipment. g. Performed an operations and information status briefing. h. Reported the movement of the group or brigade from its HS and its arrival at the mobilization station. i. Performed final coordination for HS logistics. j. Reviewed and performed initial coordination for the movement plan. k. Finalized Class VIII requisitions and forwarded them to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) for processing. 2. The group or brigade sends status reports to the appropriate command.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Recommend Priority of Employment of Engineer Assets (05-6-0080)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 3-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. The group or brigade must recommend the employment priority of engineer assets to support the concept of operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade commander recommends the employment priority of engineer assets consistent with the concept of the operations and the supported commander's intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The group or brigade staff receives the mission from the commander. a. Interpreted the commander's guidance/intent. b. Prepared an engineer estimate. * 2. The group or brigade commander recommends the employment priority of engineer assets consistent with the concept of operations and the supported commander's intent, and ensures that there is no waste of engineer time, personnel, or equipment.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
 Administration/Logistical Section
 Operations and Plans Section
 Assistant Division Engineer Section
 Tactical Section

TASK: Identify the Requirement for and Prioritize Engineer Class IV and Class V Stocks (05-6-0086)
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-116)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The group or brigade is performing continuous operations in darkness or daylight under all weather conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The group or brigade allocates Class IV and engineer Class V stocks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The group or brigade receives the mission from the commander and the higher headquarters (HQ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the commander's guidance and intent were interpreted. b. Determined the command/support relationship. c. Issued a warning order to subordinate units. d. Performed appropriate staff estimates (personnel, intelligence, operations, logistics, and so forth). 2. The group or brigade estimates the amount of Class IV and engineer Class V stocks that are available and allocates them to the supporting units. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the supporting combat service support (CSS) elements to locate and transport Class IV and V supplies. b. Coordinated unit pickup of Class IV and V stocks. 3. The group or brigade issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to subordinate units for the execution of the engineer plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored the subordinate unit logistic system. b. Monitored the progress of missions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Communication Section

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured radios in the mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks. 2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS). 3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional. 4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for max signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports. 5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Detachment Headquarters
Administration/Logistical Section

TASK: Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). A tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information. b. Verified strength data. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. 2. The HQ element processes information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements. b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements. c. Updated the battle roster. d. Prepared a hasty personnel status report (PSR) and strength reports. e. Submitted PSR to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). 3. The HQ element processes replacements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation. b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster. c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages. d. Coordinated the issue of needed items. e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment. * 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the commander on unit strength and replacement status. b. Forwarded the personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports, and witness statements to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section. c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements. * 5. The company commander performs strength management functions. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Directed cross leveling. b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements. c. Reviewed strength management reports. d. Spot-checked strength information processing. e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Detachment Headquarters

TASK: Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)
 (FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)
 (AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)
 (UCMJ)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Instructed the soldiers of the leaders' intentions. d. Spoke positively concerning unit mission, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Reduced and prevented rumors. g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support. * 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the unit sleep plan. b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep. c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible. d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest. e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation. * 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks. b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts). * 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment. b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders. c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed. d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit. e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit. <p>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases. b. Assigned soldiers, who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue, to perform simpler tasks. c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers who did not show improvement after resting to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities. e. Referred soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue and those who were not recuperating for medical care. <p>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed. b. Provided hot rations. c. Coordinated postal support. d. Coordinated combat payments. e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support. f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items. g. Coordinated legal support. h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit MWR status. <p>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored soldiers' fitness. b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed). c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures. d. Corrected problem areas. e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status. <p>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Forwarded charges for trial by court-martial. <p>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness. b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents. c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weakness are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
Module 1			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
Module 2			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

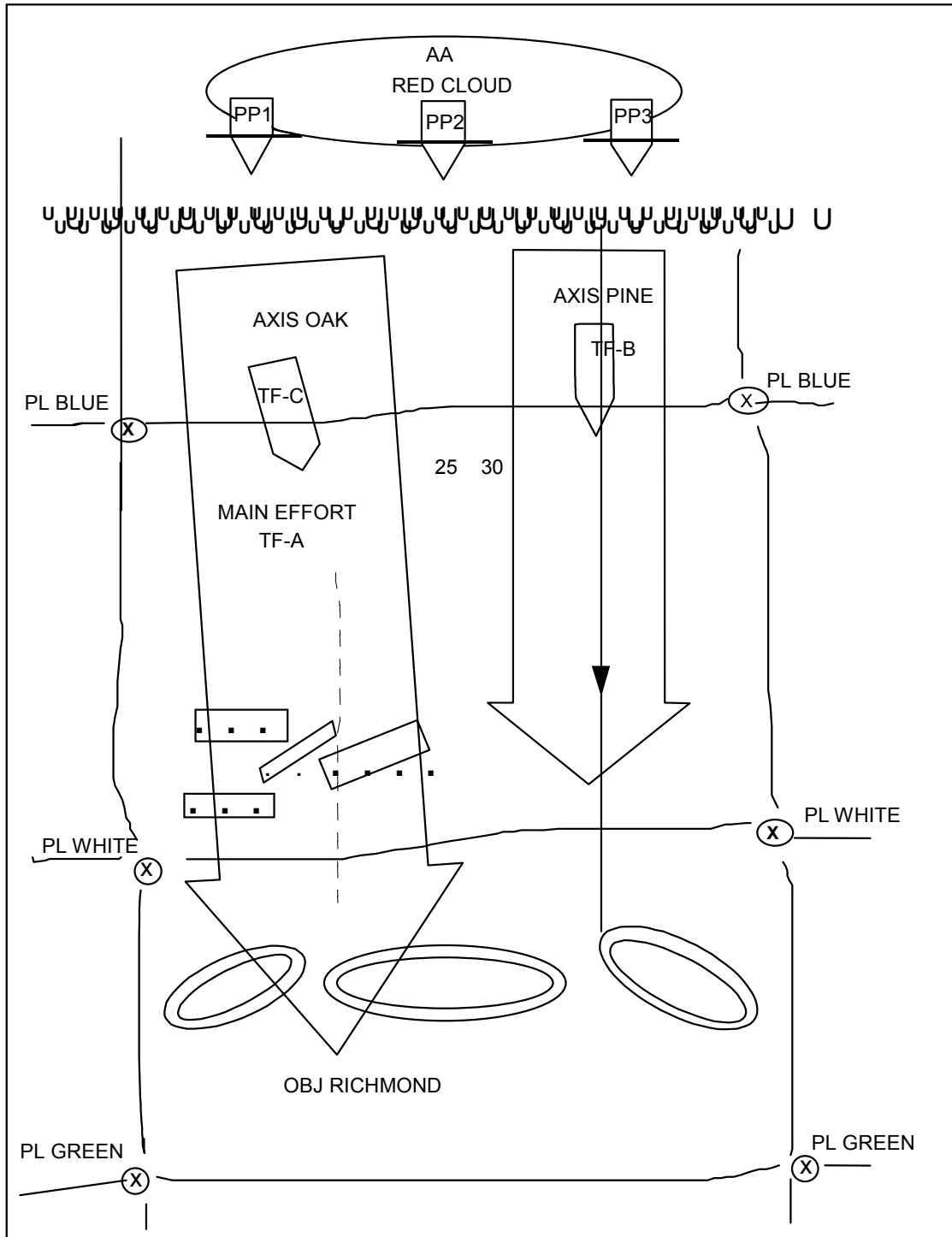


Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				
Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.						

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

- b. List each mission on a separate task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).
- c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.
- d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the exercise.			

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.

(2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this ARTEP MTP.

(3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. This includes—

- (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.
- (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
- (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
- (d) Safety procedures.
- (e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.

(f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of their occurrence and reviewing of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules for engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. Unit designation:				Date:		
2. Unit leaders (circle the most appropriate selection):						
Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive Officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S3	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion Maintenance Officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller signature:						

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET						
Exercise number and description:						
Date and time the exercise started:						
Date and time the exercise ended:						
1. <u>Weather conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. <u>Ground conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. <u>Light conditions (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Day		Night				
Moon phase:	None	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full	
Average range of visibility due to light:						
4. <u>Terrain (circle the appropriate description):</u>						
Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average range of visibility due to terrain:						
5. <u>Remarks:</u>						

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

6-8. After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-actions phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR includes the following guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

OPERATION ORDER	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th Engineer Battalion
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p>	

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY
(classification)

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase

modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

B-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

B-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART**Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	Multiplied By	Equals US Units
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

- 1LT**
first lieutenant
- 1SG**
first sergeant
- 1st**
first
- 2nd**
second
- 5 Ss and T**
search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
- AA**
avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly
- AAR**
after-action review; after-action report
- ABCS**
Army Battle Command System
- ABL**
authorized basic load
- AC**
active component; alternating current
- ADA**
air defense artillery
- ADAM**
area denial artillery munition
- ADC**
area damage control
- AIS**
Automated Information System
- AM**
amplitude modulation
- AO**
area of operation
- AOAP**
Army Oil Analysis Program
- APC**
armored personnel carrier

AR

Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

ARTEP

Army Training and Evaluation Program

AT

antiterrorism; antitank

ATTN

attention

ATWESS

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

BCOC

base cluster operations center

BDAR

battle damage assessment and repair

BDLT

base defense liaison team

BDOC

base defense operations center

BF

battle fatigue; board feet

BLTM

battalion level training model

BMO

battalion maintenance officer

BOS

battlefield operating system

C2

command and control

CALFEX

combined arms live-fire exercise

CATS

combined arms training strategy

CCIR

commander's critical-information requirement

CFX

command field exercise

CHS

combat health support

CI
close internal; coordinating installation; counterintelligence

Class I
Subsistence items (meals, ready-to-eat [MRE], T-rations, and fresh fruits and vegetables) and gratuitous-issue health and comfort items.

COA
course of action

COMEX
communications exercise

COMMZ
communications zone

COMSEC
communications security

CONUS
continental United States

COP
common operational picture

CP
command post; checkpoint

CPT
captain

CPX
command post exercise

CS
combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile

CSR
controlled supply rate

CSS
combat service support

DA
Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

DD
Department of Defense

DENTAC
dental activity

DOD
Department of Defense

DODIC

Department of Defense identification code

DRS

direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

DTSS

Digital Topographic Support System

EBA

engineer battlefield assessment

ECCM

electronic countercountermeasures

EEFI

essential elements of friendly information

EI

essential elements of information

EGA

extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form

EMO

electronic media only

ENDEX

end of exercise

EPW

enemy prisoner of war

EW

electronic warfare

FBCB2

Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

FLAGS

favorable personnel actions

FM

field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

FO

forward observer

FORSCOM

United States Army Forces Command

FRAGO

fragmentary order

FS

fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

FSC
Finance Support Command; federal supply catalog

FSG
forward support group

FSO
fire support officer; food service officer

FSOP
field standard operating procedure

FTX
field training exercise

G1
Assistant Chief of Staff, G1 (Personnel)

G2
Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)

G3
Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans)

GRREG
graves registration

GRS
general religious support

HHC
headquarters and headquarters company

HIV
human immunodeficiency virus

HN
host nation

HQ
headquarters

HS
home station

ING
inactive National Guard

INTREP
intelligence report

INTSUM
intelligence summary

IPB

intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

KIA

killed in action

LES

leave and earnings statement

LO

learning objective; low; lubrication order

LOC

lines of communication; location

LOGPAC

logistics package; logistical package

LOI

letter of instruction

LZ

landing zone

MAJ

major

MANSCEN

Maneuver Support Center

MAPEX

map exercise

MCM

Manual for Courts-Martial

MCS

Maneuver Control System

MCSR

materiel condition status report

MDI

modernized demolition initiator

MEDDAC

medical department activity

METL

mission-essential task list

METT-TC

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MICLIC

mine clearing line charge

MIJI
meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

MILES
Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

MLC
military load classification; military load class

mm
millimeter(s)

MO
Missouri; monthly

MOPP
mission-oriented protective posture

MOPP2
mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

MOPP4
mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

MORTREP
mortar bombing report

MOS
military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

MOUT
military operations on urbanized terrain

MP
military police

MPA
military personnel, Army

MPL
maintenance parts list

MRE
meal, ready to eat; meal, ready-to-eat

MS
medium set; methyl salicylate; mobilization station; Medical Service Corps; military specifications

MSR
main supply route

MTF
medical-treatment facility

MTP

mission training plan; MOS training plan

MWR

morale, welfare, and recreation

NATO

North Atlantic Treaty Organization

NBC

nuclear, biological, and chemical

NBC 1 Report

Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

NBC 4 Report

Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

NBC 5 Report

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

NCO

noncommissioned officer

NCOER

noncommissioned officer evaluation report

NCOIC

noncommissioned officer in charge

NCS

net control station

NG

National Guard

No.

number

NPA

net pay advice

O/C

observer/controller

OEG

operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

OIC

officer in charge

- OP**
observation post; operational procedure
- OPFOR**
opposing forces
- OPLAN**
operation plan
- OPORD**
operation order
- OPSEC**
operations security
- OPTEMPO**
operational tempo; operating tempo
- P**
needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature
- PAC**
personnel and administration center
- pam**
pamphlet
- PCC**
precombat check
- PCF**
personnel control facility; pound(s) per cubic foot
- PCI**
photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection
- PDDE**
power-driven decontamination equipment
- PDS**
personnel daily summary
- PIR**
priority intelligence requirements
- PL**
phase line; plastic limit; Poland
- PLL**
prescribed load list
- PM**
provost marshal; program manager; preventive maintenance
- PMCS**
preventive-maintenance checks and services

POE

port of embarkation

POL

petroleum, oils, and lubricants

POM

preparation for oversea movement; program objective memorandum

POS/NAV

position/navigation

POV

privately owned vehicle

PSC

personnel service company

PSR

personnel status report

PTSR

postmobilization training and support requirements; post-mobilization training and support requirements

R&S

reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance

RAAM

remote antiarmor mine

radiac

radiation, detection, indication, and computation

RAOC

rear-area operations center

RATELO

radiotelephone operator

RC

rapid cure; reserve component

RCUCH

Reserve Component Unit Commander's Handbook

reg

Regiment; regulation; register

ROE

rules of engagement

ROI

rules of interaction

- RP**
Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus
- RSR**
required supply rate
- RTD**
return to duty
- S1**
Adjutant (US Army)
- S2**
Intelligence Officer (US Army)
- S3**
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
- S4**
Supply Officer (US Army)
- SA**
semiannually; situational awareness
- SATRAN**
satellite transmission
- SATS**
Standard Army Training System
- SAW**
squad automatic weapon
- SB**
supply bulletin; switchboard
- SCATMINE**
scatterable mine
- SCPE**
simplified collective-protection equipment
- SHELREP**
shelling report
- SHORAD**
shore-range air defense
- SHTU**
simplified handheld terminal unit
- SI**
Slovenia
- SIDPERS**
Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

SITREP

situation report

SJA

Staff Judge Advocate

SOFA

Status of Forces Agreement

SOI

signal operation instructions

SOP

standing operating procedure

SP

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

SSI

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

STB

supertropical bleach

STP

soldier training publication

STRAC

Standards in Training Commission

STX

situational training exercise

T

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

T&EO

training and evaluation outline

TACSOP

tactical standing operating procedure

TAMMS

The Army Maintenance Management System

TC

technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

TEWT

tactical exercise without troops

TF

task force; total float

TM	team; technical manual; trademark
TNT	trinitrotoluene
TOC	tactical operations center
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TSEC	transmission security
U	unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
ULLS	unit level logistics system
UMT	unit ministry team
UPW	unit proficiency work sheet
US	United States
USA	United States of America; United States Army
USAR	United States Army Reserve
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
USPFO	United States Property and Fiscal Officer
UXO	unexploded ordnance
WAM	wide-area munition; wide area mine

WCS

weapon control status; weapon control station

WESTCOM

United States Army, Western Command

WIA

wounded in action

WO

warrant officer; warning order

WSRO

weapon systems replacement operations

XO

executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 15-6	Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers. 11 May 1988
AR 190-47	The Army Corrections System. 15 August 1996
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 30 November 2001
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973
AR 220-15	Journals and Journal Files. 1 December 1983
AR 25-50	Preparing and Managing Correspondence. 5 March 2001
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 27-10	Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996
AR 27-20	Claims. 31 December 1997
AR 30-22	The Army Food Program. 3 August 2002
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 600-20	Army Command Policy. 15 July 1999
AR 600-38	Meal Card Management System. 11 March 1988
AR 600-8	Military Personnel Management. 1 October 1989
AR 600-8-14	Identification Cards for Members of the Uniformed Services, Their Family Members, and Other Eligible Personnel. 1 March 1998
AR 600-8-2	Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions (FLAGS). 30 October 1987
AR 600-85	Alcohol and Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Program. 1 October 2001
AR 600-8-8	The Total Army Sponsorship Program. 1 July 1993
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 635-200	Enlisted Personnel. 1 November 2000
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962

DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974
DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 31	Request and Authority for Leave (EGA). 1 September 1993
DA FORM 638	Recommendation for Award. 1 November 1994
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DOD REG 5500.7-R	Standards of Conduct. 30 August 1993

Field Manuals

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 1-05	Religious Support. 18 April 2003
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-20.98	Reconnaissance Platoon (Coordinating Draft). 1 May 2001
FM 3-21.38	Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002

FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
 FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
 FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
 FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994
 FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
 FM 34-2-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991

 FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
 FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994

 FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
 FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
 FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
 FM 3-90 Tactics. 4 July 2001
 FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
 FM 4-30.3 Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
 FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
 FM 44-64 SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
 FM 44-8 Combined Arms For The Air Defense. 1 June 1999
 FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
 FM 5-10 Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
 FM 5-100 Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
 FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
 FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
 FM 5-422 Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993
 FM 55-30 Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
 FM 5-71-2 Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
 FM 5-71-3 Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
 FM 6-22.5 Combat Stress. 23 June 2000
 FM 7-0 Training the Force. 22 October 2002
 FM 7-10 The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
 FM 71-100 Division Operations. 28 August 1996
 FM 7-22.7 The Army Noncommissioned Officer Guide. 23 December 2002
 FM 7-7 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
 FM 7-8 Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
 FM 7-92 The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992

 FM 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000

 FM 8-51 Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

 FM 9-43-2 Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

Other Product Types

DD FORM 457 Investigating Officer's Report. 29 August 1984
 FORSCOM REG 55-1 Unit Movement Planning. 1 March 2000
 TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

Technical Manuals

TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

Training Circulars

TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988
TC 25-20	A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993
TC 25-6	Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997
FM 10-27	General Supply in Theater of Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986
FM 5-116	Engineer Operations: Echelons Above Corps. 9 February 1999
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990
FM 55-20	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 71-100	Division Operations. 28 August 1996
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998

Other Product Types

FORSCOM REG 500-3-3

FORMDEPS, Volume III, Reserve Component Unit Commander's Handbook (RCUCH). 1 March 1991.

UCMJ

Uniform Code of Military Justice.

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____

DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

- a. Active component
- b. Reserve component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse
- b. Has made training better
- c. Has had no affect on training
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?

- a. Harder
- b. Easier
- c. About the same
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
- c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
- d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

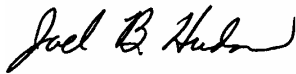
- a. Have too many pages
- b. Are hard to read and understand
- c. Need more illustrations
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
- e. Need more information on leader training
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
- g. Need more information on support and resources
- h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP
8 JULY 2003

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0319607

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic media only.

PIN: 080926-000